E. H. Atherton
Roxbury.

Sept. 8, 1902.

LATIN LESSONS

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

ALLYN AND BACON
Boston and Chicago

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE present work is new, and has been prepared in response to the extensive demand for a beginner's book suited for use in conjunction with the *Latin Grammar.* In all essentials it follows the plan of my *Foundations of Latin,* published in 1898. Beginning with Lesson XVII, it has been found possible to introduce a number of simple selections of continuous discourse, which, it is hoped, will add an element of interest to the book without detracting from its disciplinary value. Most of these selections are taken, with the consent of the publishers (Messrs. Longmans, Green and Co.), from Longmans' *Illustrated First Latin Reading Book.* I have also inserted frequent 'review lessons' throughout the book.

The material of the body of the work is arranged in sixty-six 'Lessons,' a designation chosen more in view of its convenience and familiarity than because the single 'Lessons' were deemed to represent the normal amount of work to be prepared for each class exercise. Many of them will be too long, probably, even for the best class. Just how much is taken

will vary with existing conditions, and must be determined by the teacher.

Acknowledgments are hereby tendered to Messrs. Longmans, Green and Co. for their kind permission to use the selections taken from their *First Latin Reading Book*, also to Mr. Homer C. Newton, Classical Scholar of Cornell University, who lent me valuable assistance in preparing the English-Latin exercises.

CHARLES E. BENNETT.

CORNELL UNIVERSITY,
May, 1901.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTORY.

INFLECTIONS.

Nouns and Adjectives.

Pronouns.

Verbs.

SYNTAX.

The Cases.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= *ablative.*
acc.	= *accusative.*
adj.	= *adjective.*
adv.	= *adverb, adverbial.*
c.	= *common (gender).*
comp.	= *comparative.*
conj.	= *conjunction.*
dat.	= *dative.*
decl.	= *declension.*
dep.	= *deponent.*
e.g.	= *exempli gratia* = *for example.*
etc.	= *et cetera* = *and so forth.*
f.	= *feminine.*
gen.	= *genitive.*
i.e.	= *id est* = *that is.*
impers.	= *impersonal, impersonally.*
indecl.	= *indeclinable.*
indic.	= *indicative.*
inf.	= *infinitive.*
interrog.	= *interrogative.*
intr.	= *intransitive.*
lit.	= *literally.*
masc.	= *masculine.*
n., neut.	= *neuter.*
nom.	= *nominative.*
p., pp.	= *page, pages.*
partic.	= *participle.*
pass.	= *passive.*
pl., plu.	= *plural.*
prep.	= *preposition.*
pres.	= *present.*
pron.	= *pronoun.*
rel.	= *relative.*
sc.	= *supply.*
sing.	= *singular.*
sup., super.	= *superlative.*
tr., trans.	= *transitive.*
w.	= *with.*
1, with verbs	= 1st conjugation.

LATIN LESSONS.

INTRODUCTORY.

Alphabet, Sounds, Pronunciation.

§§ 1; 2; 3, 1–3.

The references are to the author's *Latin Grammar.*

Quantity and Accent.

§§ 5, A, 1, 2; 5, B, 1, 2; 4; 6, 1, 2.

The Parts of Speech, Gender, Number, The Cases, The Five Declensions.

§§ 10; 11; 12; 13; 14; 15, A, 1–3; 15, B, and footnote; 16; 17; 18; 19.

INFLECTIONS.

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

LESSON I.[1]

FIRST DECLENSION.—FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

§§ 20, and 1; 21, 1; 101 (Present Indicative); 166; 166, 2; 172; 254, 1; 195.

1. VOCABULARY.

cōpia, ae, f., *plenty;* plu., **cōpiae, ārum,** *forces, troops.*
dĭligentia, ae, f., *diligence.*
et, *and.*
fĭlia, ae, f., *daughter.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
īnsula, ae, f., *island.*
laudō, *I praise.*
Lucrētia, ae, f., *Lucretia,* a woman's name.
occupō, *I seize, take possession of, occupy.*
ōra, ae, f., *coast.*
parō, *I get ready, prepare, procure; win.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
renūntiō, *I announce, report.*
servō, *I guard, watch.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*

---

[1] For exercises on the translation of English into Latin, see p. 87.

2. 1. Fīliārum, fīliae, fīliās. 2. Prōvinciīs, prōvinciam, prōvinciārum. 3. Cōpiae, cōpiārum, cōpiīs, cōpiās. 4. Dīligentiā, dīligentiam, dīligentiae. 5. Ōrārum, ōrīs, ōrās, ōrā, ōrae. 6. Pecūniam, pecūniae, pecūniā. 7. Victōriā, victōriae, victōriam. 8. Victōriīs, victōriās, victōriārum. 9. Īnsulīs, īnsulā, īnsulae, īnsulārum. 10. Lucrētiam, Lucrētiae; Galliam, Galliae.

3. 1. Lucrētia fīliās[1] laudat.[2] 2. Fīliam Lucrētiae laudāmus. 3. Fīliās Lucrētiae laudātis. 4. Ōrās prōvinciae servās. 5. Cōpiās parat. 6. Dīligentiam fīliārum laudātis. 7. Pecūniam parant. 8. Victōriam cōpiārum renūntiāmus. 9. Prōvinciam Galliae occupat. 10. Ōrās īnsulae occupāmus. 11. Lucrētiam et fīliās[1] laudō. 12. Cōpiae victōriam renūntiant. 13. Fīliae Lucrētiae cōpiās laudant.

LESSON II.

Second Declension. — Present Indicative of Sum. — Predicate Nouns. — Appositives.

§§ 23; 25, 2; 26, 1, *a*; 100 (Present Indicative); 167; 168; 169, 1, 2.

4. VOCABULARY.

Ardea, **ae**, f., *Ardea*, a Latin town.

captīvus, **ī**, m., *captive*, *prisoner*.

---

[1] 'Her daughters.' The possessive pronouns, 'his,' 'her,' 'its,' 'their,' etc., are often omitted in Latin, and may be freely supplied in translation, wherever this makes appropriate sense.

[2] The verb ordinarily stands at the end of the sentence in Latin.

fīlius, ī (iī), m., *son.*
Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul.*
gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword.*
jūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden.*
Latīnus, ī, m., *a Latin.*
līberī, ōrum, m. pl., *children.*
Mārcus, ī, m., *Marcus*, a man's name.
numerus, ī, m., *number.*
nūntius, ī (iī), m., *messenger.*
oppidum, ī, n., *town, walled town.*
oppūgnō, *I attack, assault.*
praemium, ī (iī), n., *reward.*
Rōmānus, ī, m., *a Roman.*

5. 1. Praemiīs, praemiō, praemiōrum, praemī, praemia. 2. Nūntiō, nūntiōs, nūntium, nūntī. 3. Fīlī, fīliī, fīliōs, fīliō. 4. Numerī, numerīs, numerum. 5. Oppidōrum, oppida, oppidō, oppidī. 6. Captīvōs, captīvī, captīvō, captīvōrum. 7. Gladiō, gladiōs, gladiī, gladī. 8. Agrōrum,[1] agrō, agrīs, agrōs. 9. Puerī,[1] puerīs, puerōrum, puerō. 10. Virī, virō, virōrum.

6. 1. Sumus nūntiī[2] Rōmānōrum. 2. Estis captīvī. 3. Rōmānī numerum jūmentōrum parant. 4. Mārcus est fīlius Lucrētiae. 5. Rōmānī oppida Gallōrum oppūgnant. 6. Fīliōs Mārcī laudāmus. 7. Estis līberī Mārcī. 8. Nūntiī victōriam Rōmānōrum renūntiant. 9. Captīvī sunt Gallī. 10. Nūntius victōriae est Gallus. 11. Praemia līberōrum laudātis. 12. Rōmānī captīvōs servant. 13. Es fīlius Mārcī et Lucrētiae. 14. Rōmānī Ardeam, oppidum Latīnōrum, oppūgnant.

---

[1] Words given in the paradigms of the *Grammar* are intentionally omitted from the Lesson Vocabularies.

[2] A predicate noun may (and often does) follow the verb.

LESSON III.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Agreement of Adjectives.

§§ 62–65, 1; 233, 2; 234; 350, 4, and *a*.

7. VOCABULARY.

dīmicō, *I contend.*
fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
māgnus, a, um, *large, great.*
multus, a, um, *much;* pl., *many.*
pābulum, ī, n., *forage, food* (of animals).
parvus, a, um, *small.*
proelium, ī (iī), n., *battle.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman.*
vexō, *I ravage.*

8. 1. Multa jūmenta, multōrum jūmentōrum, multīs jūmentīs. 2. Māgnae īnsulae, māgnārum īnsulārum; parvam īnsulam, parvīs īnsulīs. 3. Fīliae pulchrae, fīliōs pulchrōs, fīliam pulchram. 4. Puerōrum bonōrum, puerō bonō, puerīs bonīs. 5. Agrōs multōs, agrōrum multōrum, agrīs multīs. 6. Prōvinciae fīnitimae, prōvinciīs fīnitimīs.

9. 1. Multa jūmenta parāmus. 2. Gallī et Rōmānī multīs proeliīs dīmicant. 3. Jūmenta sunt parva. 4. Cōpiae Rōmānae agrōs fīnitimōs occupant. 5. Prōvinciam fīnitimam occupāmus. 6. Māgnam dīligentiam fīliōrum laudātis. 7. Māgnam cōpiam pābulī parant. 8. Agrī Gallōrum sunt bonī. 9. Rōmānī multōs agrōs Gallōrum vexant. 10. Fīliae Lucrētiae sunt bonae et pulchrae. 11. Bellum māgnā dīligentiā parātis. 12. Hispānia est māgna prōvincia.

LESSON IV.

Third Declension: Consonant and Liquid Stems.

§§ 28–34.

10. VOCABULARY.

Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
cōnsul, ulis, m., *consul.*
dōnō, *I present.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*
imperātor, tōris, m., *commander.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
lex, lēgis, f., *law.*
līberō, *I free, set free.*
obsecrō, *I entreat.*
obses, idis, c.[1], *hostage.*
pater, patris, m., *father.*
pax, pācis, f., *peace.*
rex, rēgis, m., *king.*
salūs, lūtis, f., *safety.*
virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor.*

11. 1. Cōnsulibus bonīs, cōnsulī bonō, cōnsulem bonum, cōnsulis bonī, cōnsulēs bonōs. 2. Virtūte māgnā, virtūtis māgnae, virtūtem māgnam. 3. Mīlitēs Rōmānī, mīlitēs Rōmānōs, mīlitis Rōmānī, mīlitī Rōmānō. 4. Māgnae victōriae cōnsulis Rōmānī; multae cōnsulis victōriae. 5. Patrī cōnsulis; laus mīlitum; māgnā imperātōris virtūte.

12. 1. Rex Germānōrum salūtem et pācem obsecrat. 2. Lēgēs Rōmānōrum sunt bonae. 3. Caesar, imperātor Rōmānus, virtūtem mīlitum laudat. 4. Mārcum, cōnsulis fīlium, laudāmus. 5. Mīlitēs māgnā virtūte dīmicant. 6. Rōmānī sunt victōrēs. 7. Mīles māgnam cōnsulis victōriam renūntiat. 8. Caesar mīlitibus gladiōs dōnat. 9. Rex obsidēs Rōmānōs līberat.

---

[1] See § 15, *B*, Note 1.

10. Imperātōrem Rōmānum laudātis. 11. Nūntiī pācis salūtem obsecrant.

LESSON V.

Third Declension: Nasal Stems, s-Stems, i-Stems, Mixed Stems.

§§ 35; 36; 37; 38; 39; 39, 1; 40; 40, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*.

13. VOCABULARY.

altus, a, um, *high; deep.*
Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus,* a king of the Germans.
cīvis, is, c., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*
classis, classis, f., *fleet.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*
convocō, *I call together.*
cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*
eques, itis, m., *horseman;* in pl., *cavalry, horsemen.*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.*
genus, eris, n., *kind, class.*
Germānus, a, um, *German.*
lītus, oris, n., *shore.*
mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*
pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier;* in pl., *infantry.*
propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
terror, ōris, m., *terror, fear.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

14. 1. Cīvibus Rōmānīs, cīvīs Rōmānōs, cīvī Rōmānō, cīvium Rōmānōrum. 2. Māgnōs terrōrēs, māgnō terrōre. 3. Urbis altae, urbium altārum, urbēs altās. 4. Honōrum, honōrī, honōribus, honōre. 5. Collium altōrum, collīs altōs, collēs altī, collis altī. 6. Gentium fīnitimārum, lītoribus fīnitimīs, lītora fīnitima.

15. 1. Sunt[1] multa genera cīvium. 2. Cīvīs Rōmānōs propter māgnam virtūtem laudāmus. 3. Māgnam

---

[1] 'There are;' *est* and *sunt*, particularly at the beginning of a sentence, often have the meaning: 'there is,' 'there are.'

classem parant. 4. Collem altum occupātis. 5. Lītora multārum īnsulārum classe occupat. 6. Collēs urbis sunt altī. 7. Terror mentēs mīlitum occupat. 8. Multae gentēs cum Caesare dīmicant. 9. Cum peditibus et equitibus collēs urbis oppūgnat. 10. Gentēs Gallōrum pācem obsecrant. 11. Ariovistus gentēs Germānās convocat.

LESSON VI.

Gender in the Third Declension.—The Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

§§ 43, 1, 2, 3; 48; 50; 51; 52, 1; 52, 4; 53.

16. VOCABULARY.

aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*
collocō, *I place.*
cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).
dē, prep. w. abl., *concerning.*
dexter, tra, trum, *right.*
dubitō, *I doubt, am in doubt.*
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
fidēs, ēī, f., *fidelity, loyalty.*
in, prep. w. abl., *in, on.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*
portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*
probō, *I approve.*
quattuor, indecl., *four.*
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

17. 1. Rērum multārum, rēbus multīs, rem māgnam, reī māgnae, dē rē māgnā. 2. Portuī bonō, in portibus bonīs, portuum bonōrum, māgnus numerus portuum, portūs bonōs. 3. Senātuī Rōmānō, in senātū Rōmānō, senātūs Rōmānī. 4. Fidem bonam, fideī bonae. 5. Māgnōs exercitūs, quattuor māgnīs exercitibus, quattuor māgnōrum exercituum, māgnō exercituī.

18. 1. Caesar legiōnēs in aciē collocat et oppidum oppūgnat. 2. In māgnō portū sunt multae īnsulae. 3. Senātus dē fidē multārum legiōnum dubitat. 4. Multās rēs senātuī renūntiat. 5. Dē multīs rēbus dubitāmus. 6. Legiōnēs portum īnsulae servant. 7. Imperātor fidem exercitūs probat. 8. Dē exercitū Caesaris dubitāmus. 9. In exercitū sunt multī et bonī[1] mīlitēs. 10. In dextrō cornū equitātum collocat. 11. Est in īnsulā māgnus numerus portuum bonōrum.

LESSON VII.

Nine Irregular Adjectives.—Adjectives of the Third Declension with Three Terminations.

§§ 66; 67, 1, 2, 3, and *a*; 68; 68, 2.

19. VOCABULARY.

Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *Belgians*, a Gallic tribe.
celer, eris, e, *swift.*
equester, tris, tre, *equestrian.*
hostis, is, c., *an enemy;* pl., *the enemy.*
mūnus, eris, n., *reward.*
nunc, *now.*
perīculum, ī, n., *danger.*
regiō, ōnis, f., *region.*
sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*
spērō, *I hope, hope for;* governs the acc.
spēs, ĕī, f., *hope.*
superō, *I conquer, defeat.*
vāstō, *I lay waste.*
vītō, *I avoid.*

20. 1. Alterius praemī, alia praemia, aliīs praemiīs. 2. Sine ūllō honōre, sine ūllā spē, nūllīus urbis, nūllī

---

[1] The Latin regularly says 'many and good,' where we say 'many good.'

urbī. 3. Proelium equestre, proeliō equestrī, proelia equestria, proeliōrum equestrium, proeliīs equestribus. 4. Victōriae celeris, victōriās celerēs, victōriīs celeribus, victōriā celerī. 5. Ūnum proelium, aliud proelium, aliī proeliō, alterī proeliō.

21. 1. Sine ūllō perīculō oppida tōtīus regiōnis oppūgnāmus. 2. Nūllī mīlitī mūnera dōnātis. 3. Cōpiae Caesaris sōlīus equestrī proeliō dīmicant. 4. Aliōs mīlitēs in aciē collocās. 5. Aliam classem parāmus. 6. Aliud bellum spērant. 7. Praemia alterius bellī spērāmus. 8. Senātus dē fidē ūnīus rēgis dubitat. 9. Nūntiī sōlī pācem spērant. 10. Exercitus Rōmānus agrōs Belgārum et multārum aliārum gentium vāstat. 11. Equitēs hostēs celerī victōriā superant. 12. Mīlitēs sine ūllā spē victōriae dīmicant. 13. Perīcula alterius proelī vītāmus.

LESSON VIII.

Adjectives of the Third Declension with Two Terminations, and One Termination.

§§ 69; 69, 1; 70; 70, 1; 70, 4.

22. VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, centis, m., *young man.*
auxilium, ī (iī), n., *aid, help.*
commūnis, e, *common.*
fortis, e, *strong, brave.*
homō, minis, c., *man.*
imperō, *I demand.*
incolumis, e, *unharmed, uninjured.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *envoy.*
mandō, *I assign.*
mīlitāris, e, *military.*
negōtium, ī (iī), n., *business.*
nōbilis, e, *noble.*

omnis, e, *all, every.*
potēns, **entis**, *powerful.*
sīgnum, **ī**, n., *standard.*
tālis, e, *such.*
terra, **ae**, f., *land, a land.*
tribūnus, **ī**, m., *tribune*, officer in a Roman legion.

23. 1. Rēgēs potentēs, rēgēs potentīs, rēgis potentis, rēgum potentium, rēgibus potentibus. 2. Sīgnum mīlitāre, sīgna mīlitāria, sīgnōrum mīlitārium, sīgnō mīlitārī, sīgnīs mīlitāribus. 3. Victōria vetus, victōriae veterī, victōriās veterēs, victōriā vetere, victōriīs veteribus. 4. Hominēs tālīs, homō tālis, hominis tālis, hominum tālium, hominibus tālibus.

24. 1. Adulēscēns nōbilis est incolumis. 2. Omnēs agrī sunt bonī. 3. Omnēs lēgātī Gallōrum auxilium Caesaris obsecrant. 4. Caesar omnēs tribūnōs legiōnis laudat. 5. Virīs tālibus negōtium mandāmus. 6. Sīgna mīlitāria sunt pulchra. 7. Adulēscentibus nōbilibus gladiōs dōnat. 8. Māgnum numerum obsidum nōbilium imperat. 9. Nūllus vir fortis perīcula commūnia vītat. 10. Cum rēge potentī dīmicāmus. 11. Terrās rēgum potentium vāstāmus.

LESSON IX.

Comparison of Adjectives.

§§ 71, 1, 2, 3, 4; 72; 73, 1 (prior, citerior, ulterior, propior); 73, 2.

25. VOCABULARY.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, vigorous.*
brevis, e, *short, brief.*
castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp.*
comparō, *I get ready.*
cūrō, *I care for, take care of.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader.*
familia, ae, f., *family.*
gravis, e, *heavy, severe.*
impetus, ūs, m. (§ 57, 4), *attack.*
ops, opis, f. (nom. sing. not used), *help;* pl., *resources.*
poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*
porta, ae, f., *gate.*
quam, *than.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *Rhine.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *Rhone.*
servus, ī, m., *slave.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*

26. 1. Oppida proxima, oppidōrum ultimōrum. 2. Pūgnae ācerrimae, pūgnā ācerrimā. 3. Portārum mājōrum, portīs minōribus, portam pulchriōrem, portae pulcherrimae. 4. Castrōrum mājōrum, castrīs minōribus. 5. Poenārum gravissimārum, poenās graviōrēs, poenīs graviōribus. 6. Impetūs ācerrimī, impetū ācriōre, impetūs ācriōrēs.

27. 1. Pater māximam familiam līberōrum et servōrum cūrat. 2. Vīta hominis brevissima est. 3. Impetus hostium est ācerrimus. 4. Mīlitēs legiōnis prīmae castra minōra oppūgnant. 5. Minimum perīculum vītat. 6. Caesar est dux fortissimus. 7. Portae minōris urbis sunt pulcherrimae. 8. Mājōrēs opēs

comparāmus. 9. Ultimās gentēs prōvinciae superās. 10. Rhodanus est propior prōvinciae quam Rhēnus. 11. Poenam gravissimam vītās. 12. Legiōnēs agrōs optimōs vāstant.

LESSON X.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — Numerals.

§§ 76, 1, 2; 77 (**bene, male, māgnopere, multum, nōn multum, diū, saepe, prope**); 80, 1–5; 350, 6.

28. VOCABULARY.

aditus, ūs, m., *approach.*
Albānus, a, um, *Alban.*
animus, ī, m., *heart, mind.*
centum, indecl., *hundred.*
cōnfirmō, *I encourage.*
decem, indecl., *ten.*
difficulter, adv. (from **difficilis**), *with difficulty.*
ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*
facile (from **facilis**), *easily.*
fortiter, *bravely.*
Gāius, ī, m., *Gaius*, a man's name.
nōmen, inis, n., *name.*
prīnceps, ipis, m., *chief.*
pūgnō, *I fight.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *Sequani*, a Gallic tribe.
tardō, *I check.*
trīgintā, indecl., *thirty.*

29. 1. Cum trīgintā mīlitibus, cum tribus puerīs, cum duōbus prīncipibus. 2. Duo fīliī, duōs fīliōs, trēs prīncipēs, trium prīncipum, mille equitēs. 3. Melius, diūtius, minus fortiter, optimē. 4. Fortius, māximē, propius, saepissime. 5. Nōmina duōrum prīncipum. 6. Decem mīllia peditum; cum centum mīllibus equitum et peditum; ducenta mīllia mīlitum.

30. 1. Belgae fortius quam Sēquanī pūgnant. 2. Rōmānī Gallōs facillimē superant. 3. Cum tribus

mīllibus Gallōrum dīmicāmus. 4. Ducentī Rōmānī impetum hostium facile tardant. 5. Ūnus Rōmānus trēs adulēscentēs Albānōs superat. 6. Nōmina duōrum fīliōrum sunt Gāius et Mārcus. 7. Mīlle adulēscentēs aditum difficillimē servant. 8. Animōs legiōnum facile cōnfīrmat. 9. Diūtissimē pūgnant.

LESSON XI.

Review.

31. 1. Sine ūllō perīculō alterum oppidum oppūgnant. 2. Ūnam legiōnem in dextrō cornū collocat. 3. Lēgātī Gallōrum auxilium Caesaris obsecrant. 4. In castrīs mājōribus sunt duae legiōnēs. 5. Hostēs diū et ācriter pūgnant. 6. Duōs collēs altissimōs peditibus occupāmus. 7. Ācerrimē et fortissimē dīmicāmus. 8. Legiōnēs castra minōra oppūgnant. 9. Collem aliīs legiōnibus occupat. 10. Virtūtem ducum Rōmānōrum et mīlitum laudāmus. 11. Dux māximās cōpiās parat.

PRONOUNS.

LESSON XII.

Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, and Demonstrative Pronouns.

§§ 82; 83; 84; 85; 85, 1; 86; 86, 1; 87 (**Hīc**).

32. VOCABULARY.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to*.[1]
amīcus, ī, m., *friend*.
angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass*.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.
audācter, *bravely*.
beneficium, ī (iī), n., *kindness*.
culpō, *I blame*.
dēspērō, *I despair*, *despair of;* governs the acc.
explōrō, *I explore*.
expūgnō, *I take by storm*, *capture*.
gravis, e, *heavy*, *serious*.
injūria, ae, f., *wrong*, *injustice*.
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush*, *plots*.
longus, a, um, *long*.
memoria, ae, f., *memory*, *recollection*.
nāvālis, e, *naval*.
vocō, *I call*.

33. 1. Mihi, nōs, tū, nōbīs, suī, meī, vōs, tibi, vōbīs. 2. Vestrum, nōs, sibi, mē, sē, tē. 3. Amīcus meus,[2] amīcōrum meōrum; amīcus noster, amīcīs nostrīs.

---

[1] English *to* is rendered by *ad* in Latin, if there is an idea of motion; otherwise the dative is used.

[2] § 350, 5, *c*.

4. Pater tuus, patrī tuō, cum patre tuō. 5. Amīcus vester, amīcōrum vestrōrum. 6. Hūjus[1] puerī, huic puerō; hōs virōs. 7. Hae angustiae, hārum īnsidiārum, haec arma, hōrum castrōrum.

34. 1. Hōs puerōs ad nōs vocāmus. 2. Caesar cum hīs omnibus legiōnibus hōc oppidum expūgnat. 3. Nūllus alius imperātor cōpiās suās culpat. 4. Fīlia mea tē vocat. 5. Hī lēgātī pācem obsecrant. 6. Hae injūriae sunt gravissimae. 7. Cum hōc adulēscente quattuor captīvōs servō. 8. Hās prōvinciās explōrāmus. 9. Vestra memoria hūjus injūriae est longissima. 10. In hāc pūgnā nāvālī audācissimē pūgnant. 11. Cōpiae hūjus ducis victōriam dēspērant.

LESSON XIII.

Demonstrative Pronouns (**Iste, Ille, Is, Īdem**). —The Intensive Pronoun.

§§ 87; 88.

35. VOCABULARY.

agmen, minis, n., *army* (on the march), *column.*
celeritās, tātis, f., *speed.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain.*
hiemō, *I pass the winter.*
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly.*
iter, itineris, n. (§ 42, 1), *journey, march.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command, order.*
officium, ī (iī), n., *duty.*
opīniō, ōnis, f., *opinion.*
ōrdō, inis, m., *rank.*
praestō, *I show.*
servō, *I preserve.*
temptō, *I attempt, make trial of;* governs the acc.
vulnerō, *I wound.*

---

[1] § 350, 5, *a.*

36. 1. Istīus frūmentī, istud frūmentum, istō frūmentō. 2. Eādem celeritāte, ējusdem opīniōnis, eadem mandāta. 3. Ējus[1] pater, eōrum[1] līberī. 4. Eīsdem itineribus, eōrundem equōrum. 5. Illīs frātribus, illōrum frātrum, illī frātrī, cum illā fīliā. 6. Idem agmen, eadem agmina, in eōdem agmine, eārundem opīniōnum.

37. 1. Eum vulnerō. 2. Eōs gladiō meō vulnerō. 3. Eam ad nōs vocō. 4. Patrem eōrum obsecro. 5. Ējus patrī illud negōtium mandō. 6. Ipse[2] in illīs regiōnibus cum hīs legiōnibus hiemat. 7. Illum aditum difficiliōrem temptant. 8. Eadem beneficia nōbīs praestat. 9. Illī mīlitēs ōrdinēs servant. 10. Illa officia sunt minus difficilia. 11. Ducēs illōrum exercituum sunt ignāvissimī. 12. Illī hominī plūrimōs agrōs dōnātis.

LESSON XIV.

Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agreement of Relative Pronouns.

§§ 89; 90, 1, 2; 91; 91, 1, 2, 3, 8.

38. VOCABULARY.

angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
apertus, a, um, *open.*
armō, *I arm.*
auctōritās, tātis, f., *authority, influence.*
castellum, ī, n., *fort.*
cīvitās, tātis, f., *state.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (division of a legion).

---

[1] § 86, 1.

[2] *Ipse* alone means 'he himself.'

condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
dēlectō, *I delight.*
fīnis, is, m., *end, boundary.*
mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty.*
recūsō, *I refuse.*
turpis, e, *base.*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*

39. 1. Cūjusque cohortis; quamque cohortem, cuique cohortī. 2. Cuiquam, quidquam, cūjusquam. 3. Cūjus auctōritās? In quā cīvitāte? 4. Oppidōrum quōrundam, in oppidīs quibusdam, virō cuidam, mulierem quandam. 5. Cūjus castellī? Quod castellum? 6. Quis vir? Quī vir? 7. Amīcō cuivīs, amīcīs quibusvīs.

40. 1. Hīc imperātor legiōnēs quāsdam armat. 2. Praeda aliquōs mīlitēs dēlectat. 3. Quae oppida mīlitēs oppūgnant? 4. Oppidum quoddam Belgārum oppūgnant. 5. Ille dux quāsdam condiciōnēs turpēs dēditiōnis recūsat. 6. Quis homō nōs obsecrat? 7. Quod oppidum oppūgnātis? 8. Regiōnēs quae apertae sunt vāstāmus. 9. Fīnēs cūjusque prōvinciae sunt angustī. 10. Cūjus uxor est haec mulier? 11. Est uxor ējus virī quem servāmus.

VERBS.

LESSON XV.

The Conjugations. — Indicative of **Sum**.

§§ 93–95; 98; 99; 100 (Indicative Mood).

41. VOCABULARY.

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival.*
animus, ī, m., *soul.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
Juppiter, Jovis, m. (§ 41), *Jupiter.*
locus, ī, m., *place*, pl. **loca, ōrum**, n.
mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
nōndum, *not yet.*
oculus, ī, m., *eye.*
prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of.*
repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*
ubi, interr. adv., *where?*

42. 1. Fueritis, erās, erō, erunt, fuerint. 2. Fuistī, estis, eris, fuerātis, erit. 3. Fuerās, sumus, fuērunt, erit. 4. Sunt meliōrēs, es melior, fuistis optimī. 5. Erāmus amīcī, sumus lēgātī. 6. Victōrēs fuimus, fuerat victor. 7. Fuerō, erat, erant. 8. Fuēre, est, eram.

43. 1. Nōndum cōnsul fuī. 2. Hī cōnsulēs ignāvī fuērunt. 3. Ubi pater tuus fuerat? 4. In castrīs

hostium erat. 5. In plūrimīs Gallōrum oppidīs fuimus. 6. Prō hīs castrīs erat fossa alta. 7. Animus est oculus mentis. 8. Juppiter fuit māximus Rōmānōrum deus. 9. Adventus equitum repentīnus fuerat. 10. Nātūra locī fuit difficilis. 11. Vōs, mīlitēs, quī omnia perīcula vītātis, estis turpēs. 12. Hī montēs sunt altissimī.

LESSON XVI.

SUBJUNCTIVE, IMPERATIVE, INFINITIVE, PARTICIPLE OF Sum.

Page 57.

44. VOCABULARY.

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship.*
beātus, a, um, *happy.*
cōnsilium, ī (iī), n., *plan, advice.*
contentus, a, um, *contented.*
controversia, ae, f., *controversy.*
fēlīx, līcis, *fortunate, happy.*
inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among.*
laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful.*
lībertās, ātis, f., *freedom.*
nōn, *not.*
semper, adv., *always.*
sub, prep. w. abl., *under.*
supplicium, ī (iī), n., *punishment, torture.*
tempus, oris, n., *time.*

45. 1. Fuisse, estō, sīmus, essent. 2. Esse, futūrus, sit, fuissem. 3. Contentī fuissēmus, sit fēlīx, sint fēlīcēs. 4. Este, sītis, estōte, esset. 5. Suntō, futūrus esse, es. 6. Fuissētis beātī, fuisset beātus. 7. Essem, fuissēs, sīs.

46. 1. Sit amīcitia inter mē et tē. 2. Haec lēx estō brevis. 3. Laetissimus fuisset. 4. Sub aliō duce mīli-

tēs fortiōrēs fuissent. 5. Nūllae contrōversiae inter vōs sint. 6. Quod cōnsilium melius fuisset? 7. Suntō supplicia gravia. 8. Hīs praemiīs nōn contentus essēs. 9. Nōn fuissēmus amīcī tālium hominum. 10. Sītis, amīcī,[1] fortēs. 11. Nūllum tempus melius fuisset. 12. Sīmus semper amīcī lībertātis.

LESSON XVII.

First Conjugation: Indicative Active.

Page 58.

47. VOCABULARY.

administrō, 1, *I administer.*
cōnfīrmō, 1, *I establish, confirm.*
impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* in pl., *baggage.*
jam, adv., *already.*
modo, adv., *just, just now.*
Octodūrus, ī, m., *Octodurus,* a city of the Veragri.
perturbō, *I confuse, throw into confusion.*
praetor, ōris, m., *praetor.*
quārē, interr. adv., *why?*
quīnque, indecl., *five.*
socius, iī, m., *ally.*
sublevō, 1, *I relieve.*
trānsportō, 1, *I transport.*
Veragrī, ōrum, m. pl., *Veragri,* a Gallic tribe.
verbum, ī, n., *word.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

48. 1. Trānsportāvistis, trānsportābimus, trānsportābat. 2. Trānsportāvit, trānsportāmus, trānsportāverant. 3. Collocābit, collocābant, collocāverat. 4. Collocātis, collocābās, collocāverās. 5. Occupābis,

---

[1] The vocative regularly stands after one or more words of the sentence.

occupāvistis, occupāveritis. 6. Parāvērunt, parās, parābāmus. 7. Pūgnābitis, pūgnāvī, pūgnāverimus. 8. Laudābātis, laudāvimus, laudāvit.

49. 1. Caesar plūrimās nāvēs jam parāverat. 2. Hās quīnque legiōnēs in eō locō collocābit. 3. Haec cōnsilia nōndum probāvī. 4. Quis ista verba probābit? 5. Quārē pācem et amīcitiam cum hīs cīvitātibus nōn cōnfīrmāvistis? 6. Gallī impedīmenta sua celeriter trānsportāvērunt. 7. Praetōrēs Rōmānī rēs sociōrum administrāvērunt. 8. Amīcōs auxiliō sublevāvimus. 9. Hae cohortēs ōrdinēs hostium facile perturbāverant. 10. Locus ubi legiōnēs hiemābant fuit Octodūrus, vīcus Veragrōrum.

50. A Dangerous Wedding.

Sōl[1] quondam uxōrem dūcere[2] volēbat.[3] Rānae ad sīdera clāmōrem tollunt.[4] Juppiter causam querēlae quaerit.[5] "Nunc," inquiunt,[6] "ūnus sōl omnēs lacūs exūrit;[7] quid futūrum est, sī līberōs creābit?"

---

[1] In the passages of continuous narrative, the pupil will consult the General Vocabulary at the end of the book for words that have not occurred in previous Lessons.

[2] **uxōrem dūcere**: lit. *to lead* (*i.e.* take) *a wife*, and so, *to marry*.

[3] **volēbat**: *wished*.

[4] **tollunt**: [illegible]

[5] **quaerit**: [illegible]

[6] **inquiunt** [illegible]

[7] **exūrit**: [illegible]

LESSON XVIII.

First Conjugation: Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive, etc., Active Voice.

Page 59.

51. VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, prep. w. abl., *from.*
ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*
cōnservō,[1] 1, *I keep.*
cupidus, a, um, *fond.*
nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat.*
numquam, *never.*
rogō, 1, *I ask.*
spectō, 1, *I look upon.*
tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*

52. 1. Laudātūrus, laudāns, laudent. 2. Laudāvisse, laudāvissem, laudantō. 3. Laudandō, laudāret, laudā. 4. Spectēmus, spectāte, spectāre, spectandī. 5. Spectātūrus esse, spectārent, spectet. 6. Dīmicandō, dīmicāvissent, dīmicent. 7. Dīmicāte, dīmicāns, dīmicāvisse.

53. 1. Hōc beneficium ā tē numquam rogāvissem. 2. Verba nostra probet. 3. Verba vestra probāvissent. 4. Quis hunc hominem laudāvisset? 5. Mīlitēs hunc collem occupāre temptant. 6. Laudāte hōs omnēs mīlitēs. 7. Aliud oppidum nunc oppūgnātūrī sumus. 8. Omnēs Gallī sunt cupidī pūgnandī. 9. Pecūniam quam parāvimus cōnservēmus. 10. Servāte, cīvēs,

---

[1] Verbs of the First Conjugation are so regular that their Principal Parts are not given in full. They are indicated in the Vocabularies by the figure 1, and, unless the contrary is stated, their Principal Parts are regularly formed in **-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, precisely like those of **amō**.

uxōrēs et līberōs vestrōs! 11. Ancorās nāvium parantō. 12. Mīlitēs, victōriam dēspērantēs, tamen ācriter dīmicābant.

LESSON XIX.

First Conjugation: Indicative Passive.

Page 60.

54. VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, prep. w. abl., *by.*
bīduum, ī, n., *two days.*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight.*
exspectō, 1, *I expect, await.*
frūstrā, *in vain.*
ignis, is, m., *fire.*
litterae, ārum, f. pl., *a letter.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude.*
nūntiō, 1, *I announce, report.*
pars, partis, f., *part, side.*
postulō, 1, *I demand.*
reliquus, qua, quum, *remaining.*
saepe, *often.*
sex, indecl., *six.*
tēlum, ī, n., *javelin.*

55. 1. Exspectābātur, exspectāta est, exspectātae erant. 2. Exspectātus erat, exspectātī sunt, exspectābuntur. 3. Laudātī estis, laudāberis, laudāminī. 4. Superātī sumus, superantur, superābor. 5. Vulnerātur, vulnerātus sum, vulnerābāmur. 6. Vocāris, vocātus est, vocāberis. 7. Vocābāminī, vocātus erās, vocātī estis. 8. Laudāta erat, laudātae erunt, laudābiminī.

56. 1. Quis laudābātur? 2. Haec omnia oppida oppūgnābuntur. 3. Gallī saepe superātī[1] erant. 4. Hae sex nāvēs frūstrā parābantur. 5. Posterō diē multī

[1] Observe that in the compound tenses of the passive, the participle agrees in gender and number with its subject, precisely like an adjective.

mīlitēs vulnerātī sunt. 6. Legiōnēs nostrae in cōnspectū castrōrum ā multitūdine hostium superātae erant. 7. Mora bīduī postulātur. 8. Hae litterae nūntiīs mandantur. 9. Quod oppidum expūgnātum est? 10. Ōrdinēs peditum tēlīs hostium perturbābantur. 11. Quārē perturbāris? 12. Hī agrī īgnī vāstātī erant.

57. OLD ROMAN VIRTUE.

Curius, homō singulāris virtūtis, ad focum sedēbat,[1] cum lēgātī Samnītium māgnum pondus aurī eī afferēbant.[2] Sed Curius eōs repudiāvit. "Aurum," inquit,[3] nōlō habēre;[4] mālō[5] eīs[6] imperāre, quī habent.[7]

LESSON XX.

FIRST CONJUGATION: SUBJUNCTIVE, IMPERATIVE, INFINITIVE, ETC., PASSIVE.

Page 61.

58. VOCABULARY.

disciplīna, ae, f., *discipline.*
mājōrēs, um, m. (lit. *greater*, sc. **nātū**, *by birth*), *ancestors.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom.*
nōn, *not.*
onerārius, a, um, *burden-bearing;* **nāvēs onerāriae**, *transports.*
opportūnus, a, um, *fit, opportune.*
statim, *at once, immediately.*
vix, *scarcely, with difficulty.*

---

[1] **sedēbat**: *was sitting.*
[2] **afferēbant**: *brought.*
[3] **inquit**: *said he.*
[4] **nōlō habere**: *I do not wish to have.*
[5] **mālō**: *I prefer.*
[6] **eīs**: 187, II, *a.*
[7] **habent**: *have (it)*, viz. gold.

59. 1. Laudēmur, laudandus, laudātus esse. 2. Collis occupētur, collis occupātus esset, occupārī. 3. Porta servētur, portae servātae essent, porta servāta esset. 4. Servārī, servandus, servātus. 5. Vocātus essem, vocātī essētis, vocāta esset. 6. Vocentur, vocātus, vocātus esse.

60. 1. Sine auxiliō nostrō facile superātī essētis. 2. Omnēs portae sunt servandae. 3. Impetus hostium tardandus est. 4. Haec oppida facillimē expūgnāta essent. 5. Verba vestra nōn probāta essent. 6. Disciplīna et mōrēs mājōrum nostrōrum laudentur. 7. Māximus numerus nāvium onerāriārum statim parētur. 8. Legiōnēs in locō opportūnō collocandae sunt. 9. Sine vōbīs haec castra vix expūgnāta essent.

LESSON XXI.

Review.

61. 1. Māximae classēs summā dīligentiā parandae sunt. 2. Haec victōria equitum nostrōrum jam nūntiāta erat. 3. Haec oppida oppūgnāta erant. 4. Adventus lēgātōrum nūntiātur. 5. Terror animōs omnium mīlitum occupāverat. 6. Hās gentēs, mīlitēs, jam saepe superāvistis. 7. Legiōnēs proeliō dīmicābant. 8. Quis fuit dux hārum cōpiārum? 9. Prīncipēs cūjusque cīvitātis ad sē vocat. 10. Quāsdam portās servābāmus. 11. Cōnspectus hārum urbium nōs omnēs dēlectat. 12. Litterās tuās exspectābō. 13. Nāvēs onerāriae parantur.

LESSON XXII.

SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

§ 103.

62. VOCABULARY.

arbor, oris, f., *tree.*
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *I increase.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*
compleō, ēre, plēvī, plētus, *I fill up.*
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *I owe;* with an infinitive, *I ought.*
habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus, *I have, possess, hold.*
ignōminia, ae, f., *ignominy, disgrace.*
imperium, ī (iī), n., *rule, sway.*
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussus, *I order.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *I remain.*
mare, is, n., *sea.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *I move.*
opera, ae, f., *assistance.*
populus, ī, m., *people.*
potestās, ātis, f., *power.*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *I keep away, keep off,* trans.
saxum, ī, n., *rock.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *I see.*

63. 1. Jussit, jubēmus, jussisse. 2. Jusserat, jubēte, jubēns. 3. Prohibuit, prohibuistis, prohibēbit, prohibeāmus. 4. Prohibētō, prohibendī, prohibuissēmus, prohibuisse. 5. Habuimus, habuerat, habēbat, habuit. 6. Habē, habitūrus esse, habeat 7. Habētis, habēbunt, habuerint. 8. Vīdistī, vīderāmus, vīdimus, vīdērunt. 9. Vidēbō, vident, vidēbās.

64. 1. Dēbētis in hōc locō manēre. 2. Sīgna hostium prō illīs castrīs vīderāmus. 3. Hostēs sine auxiliō vestrō facile prohibuissēmus. 4. Illās cōpiās

commeātū prohibeāmus. 5. Sine operā vestrā tōtum mare in potestāte nostrā nōn habuissēmus. 6. Illās fossās altās saxīs et arbōribus complēbant. 7. Populus Rōmānus imperium suum māgnopere auxit. 8. Ignōminiam vītāre dēbēmus. 9. Castra ab hōc locō mōverat.

LESSON XXIII.

Second Conjugation: Passive Voice.

§ 104.

65. VOCABULARY.

barbarus, ī, m., *a barbarian.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *I stir up.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
nihil, indecl., *nothing.*
peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *I terrify.*
subitō, *suddenly.*
suspīciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion.*
sustineō, ēre, uī, *I withstand.*
timeō, ēre, uī, *I fear.*
videōr, ērī, vīsus sum, pass. of **videō,** *I am seen, I seem, appear.*

66. 1. Vīsus est, vīsae erant, vīsī sunt. 2. Timēre videntur, timēre videbātur, timēre vīsa est. 3. Prohibēbāmur, prohibitī sumus, prohibita erat. 4. Prohibeantur, prohibērī, prohibendus. 5. Jubērī, jubeātur, jussus esset, jussus esse. 6. Jubēbātur, jubēbimur, jussī sumus. 7. Perterritae erant, perterrēbāris, perterrēbiminī, perterrērī.

67. 1. Suspīciōnēs vestrae auctae sunt. 2. Mīlitēs nostrī fossās hostium complēvisse videntur. 3. Haec castra subitō mōta erant. 4. Impetus barbarōrum

fortiter sustinēbitur. 5. Gallī sunt prohibendī. 6. Hae fossae celeriter complētae essent. 7. In eō locō manēre jussī erāmus. 8. Nihil est timendum. 9. Vīsī sunt māgnopere perterrērī. 10. Hī equitēs multitūdine peditātūs perterritī erant. 11. Omnēs hominēs hīs contumēliīs commōtī sunt.

68. THE DEATH OF EPAMINONDAS.

Epamīnōndās Lacedaemoniōs apud Mantinēam vīcit,[1] sed ipse hastā vulnerātus est. Prīmum rogāvit num clipeus esset[2] salvus. Amīcī respondērunt, "Salvus est." Deinde rogāvit num hostēs fūsī essent.[3] Ubi hōc audīvit,[4] jussit hastam ēvellī[5] quā trānsfīxus[6] erat, atque laetus in victōriā mortuus est.[7]

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

§ 105.

69. VOCABULARY.

ad, prep. w. acc., *near.*
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *I decide, determine.*
contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *I hurry, hasten.*[8]
crēber, bra, brum, *numerous.*

---

[1] **vīcit**: *conquered, was victorious over.*
[2] **esset**: *was.*
[3] **fūsī essent**: *had been routed.*
[4] **audīvit**: *heard.*
[5] **ēvellī**: *to be pulled out.*
[6] **trānsfīxus erat**: *had been pierced.*
[7] **mortuus est**: *he expired.*
[8] Page 83, footnote 1.

cūstōdia, ae, f., *guard.*
dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus, *I defend.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *I distribute.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *I wage.*
in, prep. w. acc., *into.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *I draw up.*
medius, a, um, *middle, the middle of.*
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I send.*
mūnītiō, ōnis, f., *fortification.*
plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain.*
post, prep. w. acc., *behind.*
praesidium, ī (iī), n., *garrison, guard.*
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus, *I leave, leave behind.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (of the night).
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *I conquer.*

70. 1. Relinquēmus, relīquimus, relīquisse. 2. Vincēbāmus, vīcisse, vincendō. 3. Vīcimus, vīcerant, vīcissem. 4. Dēfendat, dēfendere, dēfendite. 5. Dēfendunt, dēfendent, dēfendērunt. 6. Īnstrūxerat, īnstruunt, īnstruēbat, īnstruēns. 7. Īnstruendī, īnstrūxisse, īnstruēs. 8. Mīsistī, mittat, mitte, mīsisse, mittendī.

71. 1. Praesidium in hōc locō relinquēmus. 2. Caesar duās legiōnēs in Hispāniam mīsit. 3. Castra dēfendere cōnstituerat. 4. Bellum in Galliā gerētur. 5. Urbem cūstōdiīs nostrīs dēfendāmus. 6. Quis hās litterās mittet? 7. Omnēs nāvēs ad ōrās hūjus īnsulae relīquisse vidētur. 8. Aciem longam in mediā plānitiē īnstrūximus. 9. Crēbrās vigiliās post mūnītiōnēs disposuerat. 10. Omnēs cōpiās hostium facile vīcissēmus. 11. In Galliam māgnīs itineribus contendit.

LESSON XXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

§ 106.

72. VOCABULARY.

arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *I summon.*
cēterī, ae, a, *the other, the rest of.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *I force, compel.*
cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *I use up, consume.*
contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead.*
ē, ex, prep. w. abl., *out of, from;* **ē** is not used before vowels or **h.**
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead forth.*
hīc, *here.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *I fit out.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back.*
silva, ae, f., *forest.*

73. 1. Bellum gerētur, bellum gerātur, bellum gestum est, bellum gestum esset. 2. Bella gesta sunt, bella gerēbantur, bella geruntur. 3. Victus est, vincī, victus esse, victus. 4. Vincendus, victī sunt, vincuntur, vincēbātur. 5. Missī sumus, mittētur, mittitur. 6. Mittī, missus esset, missa erat.

74. 1. Cēterī obsidēs ad nōs missī erant. 2. Ab omnibus amīcīs nostrīs dēfendēmur. 3. Hae legiōnēs ad altera castra reductae sunt. 4. Praesidium hīc relīctum est. 5. Tū manēre coāctus essēs. 6. Multa bella gerentur. 7. Duae cohortēs contrā hostēs mittēbantur. 8. Hae nāvēs omnibus rēbus īnstrūctae erant. 9. Omne tempus cōnsūmptum est. 10. Legiōnēs ē

castrīs ēdūcantur. 11. Sociī nostrī arcessī dēbent. 12. Agmen longum per silvās ductum erat.

75. HOW THE DAY WAS SAVED.

Rēs[1] in angustō[2] fuit. Caesar, quī perīculum vīdit, ipse ad legiōnem dēcurrit. In prīmam aciem prōcēdit; scūtum ūnī ex mīlitibus[3] dētrahit. Centuriōnēs nōminātim appellāns, proelium redintegrat. Tum mīlitēs audācius pūgnant; impetus hostium tardātur; māgnus numerus eōrum cadit atque reliquī[4] pelluntur.

LESSON XXVI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

§ 107.

76. VOCABULARY.

audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *I hear, hear of.*
causa, ae, f., *cause.*
comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, *I find out.*
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together, assemble.*
eōdem, *to the same place.*
fāma, ae, f., *report.*
impediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *I impede, hinder.*
mūniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *I fortify.*
occāsiō, ōnis, f., *occasion, opportunity.*
posteā, *afterwards.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *I discover, find.*
umquam, *ever.*
undique, *from all parts* or *sides.*
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *I come.*

---

[1] **rēs**: *the situation.*

[2] **in angustō**: lit. *in a narrow* (*place*), *i.e.* critical.

[3] **ūnī ex mīlitibus**: *from one* (lit. *to one*) *of the soldiers.*

[4] **reliquī**: *the rest.*

Stems or Bases?

As a matter of practical pedagogy, one of the gravest errors in teaching first year Latin is in dealing with stems. The aim at this period is to make the acquisition of forms rapid and accurate. This is the province of the *memory*, not of the *understanding*. In other words, there is no necessary connection at this stage of study between the historical development of forms and the manner of their acquisition.

It is simply confusing to the pupil to learn that the stem of *servus* is *servo*. Only four forms have an *o* in the ending, and no one, I fancy, would try to explain to beginners how it really is an *o* stem throughout. The same trouble appears with *mensa* in the dative and ablative plural. To tell about an old or hypothetical ending here that included an *a* is unsound pedagogy, for it is immediately an unessential fact which distracts the attention. If one starts to explain all such things, what will be the end? And how will he deal with the identical endings of consonant and vowel stems of the third declension? The stem endings form better designations for the declensions than the terms, *first, second,* etc. But that is another matter.

The true pedagogical basis for the acquirement of forms is the so-called *base*. Of course this is not recognized in the grammars, because from the etymological point of view it does not exist. A working definition of it would be, *the part of a word that remains unchanged in declension or conjugation;* its relation to the stem,

base = stem — final vowel (if any).

Though the use of the term *base* is nothing new, being recognized in several beginners' books, its use in classroom has been restricted. Its connection justifies its extension to verbs, where the presentation of the stem involves the same difficulties as in nouns. To deal at the same time logically, etymologically, and simply, with *laudo laudas laudant, duco ducis*

2. Veniētis,
nerās.
itūrus
nvēne-
nvēnē-
ererat,
eum lo-
urbem!
5. Ger-
m illīus
8. Nōs
cāsiōnem
am tālēs
nēs, quae
OICE.
nearly.
cucurrī, cur-
forward.
t., voice, word,

inveniō, īre, venī, ventum, –
find.

80. 1. Repertus esse, reperiātur, reperta est. 2. Reperiētur, repertī sunt, reperītur. 3. Urbs mūniētur, urbs mūnīta erat, urbs mūnītur. 4. Urbēs mūniēbantur, urbes mūnītae sunt, urbēs mūniantur. 5. Circumvenīmur, circumventus est, circumventus esset. 6. Circumventus esse, circumveniātur, circumventus, circumveniendus.

81. 1. Ā multitūdine hostium circumventī sumus. 2. Hī captīvī duābus cohortibus circumvenientur. 3. Nihil repertum est. 4. Nūlla alia vōx audiētur. 5. Castra mājōra mūnienda sunt. 6. Aqua sub hīs saxīs inventa est. 7. Māgna cōpia frūmentī in hīs regiōnibus invenīrī dēbet. 8. Ūna cohors, quae temere extrā aciem prōcucurrerat, paene circumventa est. 9. Difficilibus locīs impediēbantur. 10. Haec urbs statim mūniātur.

82. HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE.

Horātius Cocles erat vir Rōmānus fortissimus. Etrūscī ōlim Rōmam capere[1] temptābant; sed ille extrēmam partem pontis occupāvit, quem Etrūscī oppūgnābant, atque sōlus tōtum hostium agmen sustinuit. Audācter pūgnāvit dōnec ab aliīs Rōmānīs pōns ā tergō[2] rescissus est.[3] Tum armātus sē in Tiberim mīsit, atque incolumis ad suōs[4] trānsnāvit. Cīvitās ergā

---

[1] **capere**: *to capture.*

[2] **ā tergō**: *from behind.*

[3] **rescissus est**: from *rescindō.*

[4] **ad suōs**: lit. *to his own, i.e.* to his friends.

tantam virtūtem grāta fuit; eī tantum[1] agrī pūblicī datum est, quantum[2] ūnō diē circumarāre potuit.[3] Statua quoque eī[4] in Comitiō posita est.[5]

LESSON XXVIII.

Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation.

§§ 109–111.

83. VOCABULARY.

accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I receive.*
capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *I take, capture.*
dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *I plunder.*
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *I make, do.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I flee, escape from.*
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I kill.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I take back;* with reflexive **sē,** *to retreat.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I undertake.*
unde, *whence.*

84. 1. Suscēpisse, suscipiendī, suscipī. 2. Fugitis, fugiant, fūgissent. 3. Fugite, fūgistis, fugit. 4. Interfectus est, interficiendus, interfēcisse. 5. Interfēcērunt, interficientur, interfecta erat. 6. Accipī, accipiēns, accipiendō. 7. Accipiantur, accipis, accipiētis. 8. Dīripuisse, dīripit, dīripuerit. 9. Fēcērunt, fēcerās, faciētis.

---

[1] **tantum**: *as much.*
[2] **quantum**: *as.*
[3] **potuit**: *he was able.*
[4] **eī**: *to him, in his honor.*
[5] **posita est**: from *pōnō.*

85. 1. Ad montem, unde modo vēnerant, sē recēpērunt. 2. Gallī omnēs captīvōs māgnīs suppliciīs interficiunt. 3. Uxor Ariovistī ā Caesare capta est. 4. Omnia haec oppida dīrepta essent. 5. Pontem in Rhēnō[1] faciāmus! 6. Lēgātī hūjus rēgis ā nōbīs acceptī sunt. 7. Mandāta tua accēpimus. 8. Ex hīs perīculīs fugiēmus. 9. Ex hōc oppidō māgnum numerum scūtōrum et tēlōrum dīripuimus. 10. Nova officia nunc suscipimus. 11. Hīc homō interficī dēbet.

LESSON XXIX.

Deponent Verbs.

§§ 112–114, 1.

86. VOCABULARY.

Aprīlis, e, *of April.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum; semi-dep., *I dare.*
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *I confer.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *I endeavor, attempt.*
ēgredior, gredī, gressus sum, *I march out.*
fīnēs, ium, m. pl., *boundaries, territory* (pl. of **fīnis,** *end*).
Helvētiī, ōrum, m., *Helvetii,* a Gallic tribe.
mēnsis, is, m., *month.*
nēmō, c. (§ 57, 3), *no one.*
moror, ārī, morātus sum, *I tarry, delay.*
paulum, *a little.*
per, prep. w. acc., *through, during.*
post, prep. w. acc., *after.*
proficīscor, ī, profectus sum, *I set out.*
queror, ī, questus sum, *I complain.*
resistō, ere, restitī, *I resist.* (§ 187, II, *a*).
revertor, ī, *I return.*

---

[1] The Romans speak of making a bridge 'in a river,' where we say 'over a river.'

87. 1. Morēmur, morāmur, morābimur. 2. Morāta est, morāta esset, morāns. 3. Morātus esse, morātus, morandō. 4. Collocūtī sumus, colloquimur, colloquantur. 5. Proficīscere, proficīscātur, profectī essent. 6. Profectus, proficīscēbātur, proficīscēre. 7. Revertiminī, revertentur, revertēbāmur. 8. Audētis, ausus est, audēbimus.

88. 1. Hunc collem nātūrā mūnītum dēfendere cōnābimur. 2. Helvētiī ē suīs fīnibus ēgressī sunt. 3. Nēmō ausus est proficīscī. 4. Hās litterās mittere nōndum cōnātī sumus. 5. Quis resistere audēbit? 6. Cōpiae paulum morābuntur. 7. In hanc urbem celeriter revertēmur. 8. Per mēnsem Aprīlem in hāc prōvinciā morābātur. 9. Post quīnque diēs proficīscētur. 10. Nātūra locī exercitum morāta est. 11. Sēquanī dē injūriīs Germānōrum queruntur.

89. How Corvinus Won His Name.

Exercitus Rōmānus adversus Gallōs profectus erat, cum[1] quīdam ex[2] Gallīs ūnum ex[2] Rōmānīs prōvocāvit. Tum Mārcus Valerius sē obtulit[3] et prōcessit armātus in pūgnam. Corvus super ējus dextrum bracchium sēdit, et ālīs atque unguibus oculōs Gallī verberābat. Sīc superāvit Valerius et ā corvō nōmen Corvīnum accēpit.

---

[1] **cum**: *when.*
[2] **ex**: *of.*
[3] **sē obtulit**: *presented himself.*

LESSON XXX.

The Periphrastic Conjugations.

§ 115.

90. VOCABULARY.

aedificium, ī (iī), n., *building.*
atque, *and, and also.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *I say, tell.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I escape.*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I begin.*
īnstitūtum, ī, n., *institution.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, way.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *regal power, kingdom.*
subsidium, ī (iī), n., *assistance.*
trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus, *I hand over.*

91. 1. Dictūrus est, dictūrī sunt, dictūrus erat. 2. Dictūra erat, dictūrī fuērunt, dictūrī estis. 3. Profectūrus fuī, profectūrī erāmus, profectūra est. 4. Trādendus est, trādendī sunt, trādenda est. 5. Trāditūrus es, trāditūrus fuistī, trāditūrī fuērunt. 6. Sequendus est, sequendī sunt, sequendus es. 7. Secūtūrus est, secūtūra fuit, secūtūrī erāmus.

92. 1. Hōc dictūrī erāmus. 2. Mīlitēs nostrī hōc oppidum oppūgnātūrī erant. 3. Ea profectūra fuit. 4. Haec castra dēfendenda sunt. 5. Pāx cum aliīs cīvitātibus cōnfīrmanda est. 6. Lībertās nostra dēfendenda est. 7. Bellum gestūrus fuit. 8. Sēsē trāditūrī fuērunt. 9. Hōc rēgnum atque haec īnstitūta dēfēnsūrī sumus. 10. Haec nova aedificia incipienda sunt. 11. Sociīs nostrīs subsidium missūrī fuimus. 12. Aliquī modus effugiendī inveniendus est.

LESSON XXXI.

Review.

93. 1. Hae cīvitātēs in amīcitiā Belgārum mānserant. 2. Sīgna mīlitāria vīdimus. 3. Quis eōs timēbit? 4. Deī hostēs prohibeant. 5. Equitēs nostrī illud oppidum expūgnāvisse videntur. 6. Mīlitēs in castrīs continēbuntur. 7. Partem auxiliōrum relīquerat. 8. Hās prōvinciās fortiter dēfendēmus. 9. Legiōnēs in castra redūxerat. 10. Hās nāvēs relinquere cōguntur. 11. Lēgātī tōtīus Galliae undique conveniunt. 12. Plūrimī nūntiī vēnērunt. 13. Equitātus noster agmen hostium impediet. 14. Māgna cōpia frūmentī in hīs regiōnibus inventa est.

LESSON XXXII.

Irregular Verbs: Compounds of Sum; Possum; Dō.

§§ 124–127.

94. VOCABULARY.

absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *I am absent, distant.*
ac (atque), *and, and also;* ac is not used before vowels.
adsum, adesse, adfuī, *I am present, at hand.*
adversārius, ĭī, m., *adversary.*
Āfrica, ae, f., *Africa.*
amplus, a, um, *ample.*
certus, a, um, *sure.*
dēsum, dĕesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *I am wanting, I fail.*
facultās, tātis, f., *supply;* pl. *riches.*
fīdūcia, ae, f., *confidence.*
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
longē, *far.*
paucī, ae, a, *few;* used only in plural.
possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*
praesum, esse, fuī, *I am in charge of.*
Rōmulus, ī, m., *Romulus.*

95. 1. Āfuī, aberunt, āfutūrus, absēns. 2. Aderant, aderō, adfuistī. 3. Potuī, posse, poterat. 4. Poterō, potuerō, poterunt, potuerint, potuērunt. 5. Potuisse, potuissem, possit. 6. Possunt, potuit, potuerat. 7. Dederit, dent, dedissent. 8. Dabat, dedisse, dandī. 9. Dedit, dabunt, dedērunt, dedistis. 10. Praefuisse, praefuissent, praefuit.

96. 1. Māgna pecūnia tibi jam data erat. 2. Fīdūcia nōbīs dēfuit. 3. Adversāriī tuī aderant. 4. Quārē hīberna eīs legiōnibus dēfuērunt? 5. Quis mihi amplās facultātēs dabit? 6. Italia ab Āfricā longē abest. 7. Quid aliud facere possumus? 8. Prīncipem hūjus lēgātiōnis audīre nōn potuimus. 9. Possessiōnem hūjus agrī dedistī. 10. Rōmulus populō Rōmānō mōrēs ac lēgēs dederat. 11. Date nōbīs certam spem! 12. Adesse nōn poterō.

97. THE LAMB AND THE WOLF.

Agnus et lupus ad eundem rīvum vēnerant. Lupus stābat superior, et longē īnferior agnus. Tum lupus, "Cūr" inquit "turbulentam[1] mihi fēcistī aquam?" At agnus,[2] "Quī[3] possum id facere? Aqua ā tē ad mē dēcurrit." Sīc repulsus lupus, "Ante sex mēnsēs," inquit "maledīxistī mihi." Respondit agnus, "Ego nōndum nātus eram." Lupus, "Certē pater tuus" inquit "mihi maledīxit," itaque agnum lacerāvit.

---

[1] **cūr turbulentam fēcistī aquam**: *why have you made the water muddy?*

[2] **agnus**: *i.e.* the lamb said.

[3] **Quī**: *how?*

LESSON XXXIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS: Ferō AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 129.

98. VOCABULARY.

afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *I bring.*
calamitās, tātis, f., *calamity.*
cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *I bring together;* **sē cōnferre,** *to betake oneself.*
dē, prep. w. abl., *concerning; of, from.*
dolor, ōris, m., *grief.*
intereā, *in the meanwhile.*
labor, ōris, m., *labor, exertion.*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *I endure.*
prōtinus, *forthwith, straightway.*
referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *I bring back, return.*
tot, indecl., *so many.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*

99. 1. Rettulī, relātus, rettulisse. 2. Ferāmus, ferēmus, ferunt, ferent. 3. Tulērunt, ferendī, lātūrus. 4. Tulisse, ferēns, ferēbat. 5. Affertur, afferētur, allātus est. 6. Referēbātur, referrī, relātus esse. 7. Referēns, referendō, relātūrus. 8. Contuleram, contulissēmus, contulisse. 9. Cōnferrī, collātus, cōnferendī.

100. 1. Sīgna prōtinus relāta sunt. 2. Helvētiī sē ad montem contulērunt. 3. Vōbīs subsidium ferēmus. 4. Quis haec supplicia perferre poterit? 5. Hīc nūntius fāmam dē tumultū attulit. 6. Intereā hās tot calamitātēs perferēbāmus. 7. Sine hāc spē hōs labōrēs numquam pertulissem. 8. Māgna cōpia frūmentī allāta erat. 9. Adventus repentīnus Caesaris novās

spēs mīlitibus affert. 10. Haec impedīmenta referēbantur. 11. Hōs dolōrēs perferre nōn potuissem.

LESSON XXXIV.

Irregular Verbs: Volō, Nōlō, Mālō, Fīō.

§§ 130; 131.

101. VOCABULARY.

adorior, īrī, ortus sum, *I attack.*
certior, comp. of **certus;** *more certain;* **certior fierī,** *to be informed.*
crēber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *I believe.*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I depart, withdraw.*
dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement.*
ferē, *generally.*
fiō, fierī, factus sum, *be done, occur; become.*
funditor, ōris, m., *slinger.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime.*
ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
recēns, entis, *recent.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*
vāllum, ī, n., *intrenchment.*
volō, velle, voluī, *I wish, am willing.*

102. 1. Māvīs, māluisse, māvult. 2. Mālit, mālet, māluit. 3. Māluerant, mālēbat, mālumus. 4. Volueram, voluissētis, voluit. 5. Voluistis, voluisse, volunt. 6. Volent, voluerāmus, volētis. 7. Nōluisse, nōluit, nōlunt. 8. Nōlet, nōn vult, nōluerant. 9. Nōlumus, nōlēbat, nōluistī. 10. Fit, factus est, factum erat. 11. Fīat, factus, factus esse.

103. 1. Discēdere māluerat. 2. Caesar dē hīs rēbus certior factus erat. 3. Nēmō hīc manēre māluit.

4. Recentēs victōriās laudāre volumus. 5. Quid māluissēs? 6. Ob hās causās crēbrae dissēnsiōnēs fīēbant. 7. Ob timōrēs hōc vāllum adorīrī nōluērunt. 8. Ab ōrā maritimā discēdere volēbat. 9. Gallī in lībertāte manēre mālunt. 10. Hominēs id quod volunt ferē crēdunt. 11. Nōs dē dēfectiōne Gallōrum certiōrēs factī sumus. 12. Funditōrēs lapidēs volēbant.

104. The Philosopher and the King.

Philosophus ā rēge talentum petiit. Rēx respondit, "Talentum est plūs quam[1] quod[2] philosophus petere dēbet." Tunc dēnārium petiit, cum rēx respondit, "Dēnārius est minus quam quod rēx dare dēbet."

The Fox and the Grapes.

Vulpēs famē coācta[3] ūvam in altā vīneā pendentem[4] appetēbat, summīs vīribus saliēns. Ut[5] tangere nōn potuit, discessit. "Nōndum," inquit, "mātūra est; nōlō acerbam[6] sūmere."

---

[1] **quam**: *than.* [2] **quod**: *what.*
[3] **famē coācta**: *forced by hunger.*
[4] **pendentem**: *hanging.* [5] **ut**: *as, when.*
[6] **acerbam**: limiting *eam* understood referring to *ūvam*; translate: *when sour.*

LESSON XXXV.

Irregular Verbs: Eō and Compounds; Defective Verbs.

§§ 132; 133.

105. VOCABULARY.

adeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *I approach.*
circiter, *about.*
circumeō, īre, iī, itus, *I go around, surround.*
clam, *secretly.*
flūmen, inis, n., *river.*
hūc, *hither.*
ibi, *there, in that place.*
ineō, īre, iī, itus. *I enter upon;* **cōnsilium inīre,** *to form a plan.*
initium, ī (iī), n., *beginning.*
intereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *I perish.*
pereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *I perish.*
redeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *I return, go back.*
trānseō, īre, iī, itus, *I cross, cross over.*
trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*
tum, *then, at that time.*
vadum, ī, n., *ford, shallow water.*

106. 1. Interiisse, interiēns, interitūrus. 2. Interiit, interierat, interīre. 3. Trānsībāmus, trānsiit, trānsībunt. 4. Trānsībimus, trānsiimus, trānseunt. 5. Adīmus, adībant, adiī, adiisse. 6. Aditūrus esse, adiit, adierant, adiissem. 7. Redībitis, rediērunt, redībās. 8. Rediēns, redierātis, redībunt, redītis. 9. Ōdisse, meminisse, ōdit, meminit.

107. 1. Hōc flūmen clam trānsiimus. 2. Circiter trecentī peditēs rediērunt. 3. Rhēnus flūmen in hōc locō vadō trānsītur. 4. Vāllum adīre vix coeperant. 5. Haec castra circumiit. 6. Cōnsilium melius ineāmus. 7. Omnēs injūriās meministī quās frāter tuus

pertulit. 8. Duo mīllia equitum ibi periērunt. 9. Hūc redeat. 10. Ex hāc prōvinciā in urbem redierat. 11. Quārē initium trānseundī tum fēcistī?

LESSON XXXVI.

Impersonal Verbs.—Questions and Answers.

§§ 138; 162, 1, 2, 5.

108. VOCABULARY.

abeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *I go away.*
accidō, ere, idī, *happen.*
adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *I arrive.*
concurrō, ere, ī, cursum, *run together.*
incommodum, ī, n., *disaster.*
licet, impers., *it is permitted.*
neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *I neglect.*
oportet, ēre, oportuit, *it behooves.*
per, prep. w. acc., *through, by.*
perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *I come, arrive.*
quandō, interrog., *when?*
quō, interr., *whither?*
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *I write.*

109. 1. Licuit, licēbat, licēbit. 2. Oportēbat, oportuit, acciderat. 3. Verendum est, verendum erat. 4. Conveniendum est, conventum est, adventum erat.

110. 1. Quis ibi mānsit? 2. Adeundum est. 3. Eō perventum erat. 4. Statim dīmicātum est. 5. Undique ad mūnītiōnēs concurritur. 6. Nōnne vetera incommoda meministī? Bene meminī. 7. Quō abiērunt? 8. Hāsne litterās scrīpsissēs? Nōn scrīpsissem. 9. Ubi erās? 10. Quandō ad nōs redībitis? 11. Quid dīxissēs? 12. Num officium neglegēs? Nōn neglegam.

111. 1. Are you neglecting your duties? 2. Is it permitted to write a letter here? 3. Who fears disasters now? No one. 4. What rewards did you give to these brave soldiers? 5. Will you not go to the city? Certainly. Will you[1]? 6. When will the surrender occur? 7. You haven't weapons, have you? No. 8. Have you defended the gates of this town? Yes. 9. Do you remember my favors?

LESSON XXXVII.

Review.

112. 1. Caesar eō rediit, unde profectus erat. 2. Hostēs initium trānseundī faciunt. 3. Equitēs, quī Rhēnum trānsierant, nōndum redierant. 4. Hostēs dextrum cornū circumīre cōnantur. 5. Dē hīs rēbus per perfugās certior factus est. 6. Quārē sociōs nostrōs semper vexāre vultis? 7. Ob eam rem crēbra proelia fīēbant. 8. Ex castrīs Gallōrum fit repentīna fuga. 9. Helvētiī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt. 10. Hīc nūntius condiciōnēs pācis affert. 11. Ignōminiam ferre nōn possumus. 12. Multās calamitātēs pertulimus. 13. Equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deerant.

---

[1] The verb must be expressed.

SYNTAX.

THE CASES.

LESSON XXXVIII.

ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.—TWO ACCUSATIVES: DIRECT OBJECT AND PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.

§§ 172; 173; 177, 1, 2, 3.

113. VOCABULARY.

ad, prep. w. acc., *for* (denoting purpose).
appellō, 1, *I name, call.*
audāx, ācis, *courageous.*
certiōrem facere, *to inform*, lit. *to make more certain.*
Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Cicero*, the Roman orator.
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *I choose.*
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I make, render.*
Galba, ae, m., *Galba*, a man's name.
Genēva, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.
idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*
jūdicō, 1, *I judge, adjudge.*
Kalendae, ārum, f. pl., *the Kalends*, first day of the month.
ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator.*

114. 1. Helvētiī hōc oppidum Genēvam appellāvērunt. 2. Virtūs imperātōris mīlitēs fortiōrēs effēcit. 3. Galba dux factus erat. 4. Tē dē adventū equitum certiōrem fēceram. 5. Hunc collem ad mūniendum idōneum jūdicāvit. 6. Quis homō dux dēlēctus est?

7. Illum virum, quī fortissimus erat, ducem dēlēgimus.
8. Cicerōnem, ōrātōrem optimum, cōnsulem fēcimus.
9. Rōmānī prīmum diem cūjusque mēnsis Kalendās appellāvērunt.

115. 1. The troops adjudged Galba the victor. 2. Cicero was chosen consul. 3. He immediately informed the senate of these plots. 4. Galba had been made commander by the soldiers. 5. Marcus will be called noble and courageous. 6. He would have shown himself a powerful adversary. 7. Marcus judged this victory a great calamity. 8. Caesar adjudged the Belgians the bravest of all the Gauls. 9. Time and place often make men bold. 10. We shall choose you praetor.

116. INCORRUPTIBLE.

Lēgātus quīdam ā rēge Persārum māgnum pondus aurī ferēns Thēbās[1] vēnit, ut Epamīnōndam pecūniā corrumperet.[2] Is autem[3] aurum accipere nōluit. "Nihil enim," inquit, "opus pecūniā est.[4] Nam sī rēx ea vult quae Thēbānīs sunt ūtilia, sine pecūniā faciam; sīn contrāria vult, nōn satis aurī et argentī[5] habet."

---

[1] **Thēbās**: *to Thebes.*

[2] **ut corrumperet**: *in order that he might bribe, in order to bribe.*

[3] **Is autem**: *but he; autem* regularly stands second in the Latin sentence.

[4] **nihil opus pecūniā est**: *there is no need of money.*

[5] **satis aurī et argentī**: lit. *enough of gold and silver, i.e.* enough gold and silver.

LESSON XXXIX.

TWO ACCUSATIVES: PERSON AND THING; ACCUSATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS; ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE; ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT OF MOTION.

§§ 178, *a*, *b*, *c*; 179, 1, 3; 181, 1; 182, 1, *a*, *b*; 182, 2.

117. VOCABULARY.

annus, ī, m., *year.*
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens.*
contineō, ēre, uī, *I confine, keep.*
Dānuvius, ī (iī), m., *the [Danube.*
Dārīus, ī, m., *Darius.*
doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, *I teach.*
flāgitō, 1, *I demand.*
hiems, is, f., *winter.*
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *I occupy, hold.*
octōgintā, indecl., *eighty.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet).
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I advance.*
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead across.*
trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*
turris, is, f., *tower.*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctūrus, *I live.*

118. 1. Post initium hiemis trēs mēnsēs in hīs regiōnibus morātus est. 2. Posteā decem mīllia passuum prōcessērunt. 3. Dārīus cōpiās suās Dānuvium trādūxit. 4. Illa turris trīgintā pedēs alta fuit. 5. Caesar multōs annōs bellum in Galliā gessit. 6. Hīc locus trecentōs passūs aberat. 7. Tē pecūniam quam mihi dēbēs flāgitābam. 8. Hīc rēx trīgintā annōs rēgnum obtinuit, octōgintā vīxit. 9. Trīduum mānsimus incolumēs. 10. Cōpiās tōtam hiemem in castrīs continuit. 11. Cōpiae Dānuvium trāductae sunt.

119. 1. I have often reminded you (of) this. 2. Ariovistus will lead the barbarians across the Rhine. 3. We have been friends many years. 4. Darius had kept his prisoners in this tower for ten months. 5. The envoys ask aid of Caesar. 6. I will teach you all these things. 7. They could scarcely advance eighty paces into the forest. 8. Caesar demanded thirty hostages of the Helvetians. 9. They will return home. 10. When shall we come to Athens?

LESSON XL.

The Dative of Indirect Object.

§§ 186; 187, I, II, III.

120. VOCABULARY.

anteā, *previously, before.*
cōnfidō ere, fisus sum (§ 114, 1), *I trust.*
dōnum, ī, n., *gift.*
īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *I bring upon, bring against.*
noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *I injure, harm.*
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., *speech.*
parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *I spare.*
persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *I persuade.*
placeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *I please.*
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I put in charge, place in command.*
rēs pūblica, gen. **reī pūblicae**, f., *state, republic.*
sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation.*

121. 1. Parcite, cīvēs, reī pūblicae. 2. Hās litterās tibi jam mīseram. 3. Egone vōbīs nocuī? 4. Cōnfīdite, mīlitēs, imperātōrī vestrō! 5. Nūllīs lēgātīs ōrātiōne meā persuādēre poteram. 6. Tē castrīs mi-

nōribus praefēceram. 7. Galba hīs hībernīs praefuit. 8. Nēmō nōbīs bellum īnferet. 9. Frātrī tuō facile persuāsissem. 10. Huic negōtiō tē praeficiēmus. 11. Hīc sermō mihi māximē placuerat. 12. Mīlitibus jam anteā persuāserat.

122. 1. The senate put Cicero in charge of the republic. 2. The Sequani sent swords and other gifts to the Germans. 3. Darius spared the lives of almost all his prisoners. 4. His conversation greatly pleases me. 5. We shall persuade the commander of this cohort. 6. Trust your friends. 7. We shall bravely resist the enemy. 8. I sent a man whom I especially trusted. 9. These terms of peace pleased no one.

123. TWO JESTS OF CICERO.

1. Vatīnius tantum[1] paucōs diēs cōnsulātum gessit. Hinc Cicerō nōtābilī urbānitāte dīxit, "Māgnum ostentum annō Vatīnī factum est, quod illō cōnsule[2] nec hiems nec vēr nec aestās nec autumnus fuit." 2. Lentulus, gener Cicerōnis, fuit homō exiguae statūrae. Cum[3] socer illum longō gladiō accīnctum vīdisset, "Quis" inquit "generum meum ad illum gladium alligāvit?"

---

[1] **tantum**: *only.*

[2] **illō cōnsule**: lit. *he (being) consul, i.e.* in his consulship.

[3] **cum vīdisset**: translate as though indicative, — *when he had seen.*

LESSON XLI.

Dative of Reference; of Agency; of Possession; of Purpose; with Adjectives.

§§ 188, 1 and Note; 189, 1; 190; 191; 192, 1, 2.

VOCABULARY.

adversus, a, um, *adverse.*
colloquium, ī (iī), n., *conference.*
corpus, oris, n., *body.*
inimīcus, a, um, *hostile.*
obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *I block, obstruct.*
pār, paris, *equal;* w. dat., *a match for.*
tam, *so* (of degree).
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

125. 1. Haec castra nōbīs fortiter dēfendenda sunt. 2. Haec verba tibi probanda sunt. 3. Cōnsilium vestrum mihi māgnō ūsuī erat. 4. Facultātēs amplae amīcō meō sunt. 5. Diem colloquiō cōnstituāmus. 6. Hunc locum castrīs dēlēgerat. 7. Māgnae classēs Rōmānīs erant. 8. Quārē mihi tam inimīcus erās? 9. Gallī exercituī Rōmānō nōn parēs erant. 10. Hī virī hostibus iter suīs corporibus obstrūxērunt. 11. Hīc ventus nāvibus nostrīs adversus fuit.

126. 1. Aid must be sent by Ariovistus without delay. 2. He will choose a place suitable for a fort. 3. These towns are next to the sea. 4. He gave (to) the soldiers swords and shields for rewards. 5. Caesar was obstructing the march of the Helvetians. 6. He has always been hostile to me. 7. The fields and rivers seem beautiful to Marcus. 8. This plain was suitable for a cavalry battle.

LESSON XLII.

THE GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

§§ 195; 198; 199; 200; 201, 1, 2; 203.

127. VOCABULARY.

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.*
altitūdō, inis, f., *height; depth.*
armātūra, ae, f., *equipment.*
causa, ae, f., *cause.*
duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
enim, *for;* cannot begin a sentence.
etiam, *also.*
grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome.*
levis, e, *light.*
modus, ī, m., *kind, sort.*
nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*
occīdō, ere, occīdī, occīsus, *I kill.*
parum, indecl., *little, too little.*
quantum, *how much?*
satis, *enough.*
singulāris, e, *matchless.*
supersum, esse, fuī, *remain.*
virtūs, tūtis, f., *virtue.*

128. 1. Quantum pābulī in castrīs fuit? 2. Memoria tua beneficiōrum meōrum mihi grātissima est. 3. Nōn erat satis pecūniae. 4. Hīc adulēscēns singulāris virtūtis est. 5. Mīlitēs nostrī fossam duodecim pedum in altitūdinem[1] complēvērunt. 6. Erant etiam mīlitēs nōnnūllī levis armātūrae. 7. Nōn multum aestātis supererat. 8. Parum praesidī nōbīs est. 9. Māxima pars equitātūs occīsa est. 10. Nēmō plūs auctōritātis quam Caesar tum habēbat. 11. Ille enim māximae auctōritātis fuit.

129. 1. How much money have you? 2. The influence of this chief renders the Helvetians hostile to

---

[1] Literally, *into depth.* Translate: *in depth.*

the Romans. 3. A ditch of great depth blocks the march. 4. The Sequani are of matchless valor and fidelity. 5. How much grain have you? 6. He is (a man) of small influence among these tribes. 7. I have not enough money. 8. The soldiers have begun to have suspicions of danger. 9. The terror of the citizens is without cause. 10. Have you ever seen a man of this kind before?

130. THE FROG AND THE OX.

In prātō quondam rāna bovem cōnspexit et invidiā tācta pellem īnflāvit. Tum nātōs[1] rogāvit num[2] bove lātior[3] esset. Illī negābant. Rūrsus pellem intendit rūrsusque[4] rogāvit uter mājor esset.[5] Illī dīxērunt, "Bōs est mājor." Dēnique validius cōnātur sē īnflāre atque corpus rūpit.

LESSON XLIII.

THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND VERBS.

§§ 204, 1, 2; 206, 1, 2, and *a*; 207; 208, 1, 2.

131. VOCABULARY.

accūsō, 1, *I accuse.*
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, *I remind, warn.*
caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally.*
facinus, inoris, n., *deed, crime.*
fūrtum, ī, n., *theft.*

---

[1] **nātōs**: *her children.* [2] **num esset**: *whether she was.*
[3] **bove lātior**: *broader than the ox.*
[4] **rūrsusque**: *and again.* [5] **esset**: *was.*

nocturnus, a, um, *at night.*
oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, *I forget.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
prīstinus, a, um, *pristine, former.*
-que, enclitic conj., *and.*

132. 1. Nōnne illīus ēruptiōnis nocturnae meministis? 2. Vīta illīus virī perīculōrum plēna fuit. 3. Hūjus facinoris nōn oblīvīscēmur. 4. Gallī bellī cupidī fuērunt. 5. Virtūtis mājōrum suōrum meminerant. 6. Beneficiōrum tuōrum nōn oblīvīscor. 7. Eum amīcitiae nostrae admonuī. 8. Nōnne hōc meministī? 9. Quis nōs fūrtī accūsat? 10. Caesar Gallōs dēfectiōnis prīstinae admonuit. 11. Oblīvīscere bellī caedisque!

133. 1. These barbarians were fond of war. 2. The life of the soldier is full of dangers. 3. The father reminded his sons of these duties. 4. The troops were fond of danger and often made sallies at night. 5. Remember your ancestors and their pristine customs. 6. Cicero accused this man of many crimes. 7. He long remembered the kindnesses of his friend. 8. Loyalty is common to all Roman soldiers. 9. Let us forget all controversies and dissensions.

LESSON XLIV.

Review.

134. 1. Galba in vīcō quī Octodūrus appellātur hiemābat. 2. Helvētiī hunc locum opportūnissimum jūdicāvērunt. 3. Sine māgnō perīculō cōpiās Rhēnum

trādūxit. 4. Sententiam rogātus est. 5. Caesar omnibus mulieribus pepercit. 6. Eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat Galbam praefēcit. 7. Laudat eōs quī huic negōtiō praefuerant. 8. Mīlitēs nostrī māximum terrōrem hostibus īnferunt. 9. Hostēs nōbīs in cōnspectum vēnerant. 10. Castrīs erat satis praesidī. 11. Helvētiī prīstinae virtūtis suae nōn oblīvīscuntur.

LESSON XLV.

The Ablative.—True Ablative Uses: Separation, Source, Agent, Comparison.

§§ 214, 1, *a–d*; 215; 216; 217, 1, 3.

135. VOCABULARY.

amplius, adv., *more.*
centum, indecl., *one hundred.*
exeō, īre, iī, itum, *I go forth, go out.*
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *I drive out, banish.*
genus, eris, n., *race, family.*
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus, *I set on fire.*
Jūlius, ī (iī), m., *Julius*, a man's name.
nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *I am born.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *I drive back, repel.*
sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*
sexāgintā, indecl., *sixty.*
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *I loose;* of ships, *unmoor;* **nāvēs solvere**, *set sail.*

136. 1. Caesar minus quīnque mīllia passuum prōcessit. 2. Mīlitēs nostrī Gallōs ā vāllō castrōrum reppulērunt. 3. Amplius centum oppida ā Caesare capta sunt. 4. Quid est amīcitiā pulchrius? 5. Nōnne est virtūs amīcitiā pulchrior? 6. Germānī ē vīcīs

expulsī sunt. 7. Cīvēs timōre līberābimus. 8. Equitēs hostium vadō flūminis prohibuimus. 9. Jūlius Caesar nōbilissimō genere nātus est. 10. Plūs sexāgintā aedificia incendēbantur. 11. Quō patre nātus es? 12. Plūs centum mīllia hominum ē fīnibus exiērunt. 13. Nāvēs portū solvimus.

137. 1. Darius, the king of the barbarians, banished one hundred and sixty nobles from this city. 2. These towns and villages were set on fire by the Helvetians. 3. Is not the Rhine deeper than the Rhone? 4. Ten Roman horsemen drove back more than a hundred Germans from the camp. 5. Cicero was banished from the city by the Roman people. 6. When shall I be freed from the fears and griefs of this life? 7. We remained there less than three days. 8. This place was less than six hundred paces distant from us. 9. He was born of a most noble father.

LESSON XLVI.

The Ablative. — Instrumental Uses: Means, Cause, Manner, Attendant Circumstance.

§§ 218, 1, 2, 8; 219, 1; 220, 1; 221.

138. VOCABULARY.

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead on, impel.*
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
concursus, ūs, m., *a concourse, crowd.*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I use up, exhaust.*
dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, damage, harm.*
dignitās, tātis, f., *dignity.*

excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I withdraw, depart.*
exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage.*
inopia, ae, f., *need, lack.*
īnstō, āre, itī, *I press on.*
lacessō, ere, cessīvī (iī), ītus, *I harass.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *I speak.*
opus, indecl., n., *need;* **opus est,** *it is necessary, there is need.*
tempestās, tātis, f., *tempest.*
ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *I use.*

139. 1. Hostēs māgnō dētrīmentō repulsī sunt. 2. Hīc lēgātus summā dignitāte locūtus est. 3. Nāvēs hāc tempestāte ad terram redīre coāctae sunt. 4. Adventū Caesaris māgna commūtātiō rērum facta est. 5. Mīlitēs longō itinere cōnfectī erant. 6. Auxiliō amīcōrum nostrōrum ūtēmur. 7. Nōbīs equitibus peditibusque opus erit. 8. Lēgātī timōre perīculī ē castrīs excessērunt. 9. Germānī inopiā omnium rērum adductī nūntiōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 10. Hostēs equitēs nostrōs proeliō lacessīvērunt. 11. Māgnō concursū īnstābant. 12. Exitum portīs invēnērunt.

140. 1. He made these changes with the greatest danger. 2. He began his speech with great dignity. 3. The money will not be necessary. 4. He withdrew from the line of battle because of terror. 5. He has used little diligence. 6. The plain was filled with a great multitude of men. 7. This young man was exhausted by his great labors. 8. The army pressed on with the greatest speed. 9. These trenches were filled with large stones by the soldiers. 10. The Helvetii were not content with their narrow boundaries.

141. THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS.

Anus quaedam incognita ad Tarquinium rēgem quondam adiit, novem librōs ferēns, quōs[1] esse dīcēbat ōrācula dīvīna. Tarquinius pretium percontātus est; anus multum poposcit. Rēx dērīsit.

Tum illa trēs librōs ex novem combūrit; et rediēns[2] idem pretium postulat. Tarquinius multō magis rīsit.

Anus iterum trēs aliōs librōs combūrit atque dēnuō rogāvit ut[3] rēx trēs reliquōs eōdem pretiō emeret. Tantā[4] cōnstantiā victus rēx librōs mercātus est.

LESSON XLVII.

THE ABLATIVE. — INSTRUMENTAL USES: ACCOMPANIMENT, DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, QUALITY, PRICE, SPECIFICATION.

§§ 222; 223; 224; 225; 226.

142. VOCABULARY.

ante, adv., *before.*
Catō, ōnis, m., *Cato.*
dīgnus, a, um, *worthy.*
domus, ūs (§ 49, 4), f., *house, home.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand;* in military sense, *band, force.*
paulō, abl., *by a little.*

---

[1] **quōs esse dīcēbat**: *which she said were*, lit. *which she said to be.*

[2] **rediēns**: present participle of *redeō;* § 132.

[3] **ut rēx emeret**: *that the king should buy.*

[4] **tantā cōnstantiā victus**: *conquered by so great persistency.*

post, *afterwards.*
prīmum, *first, for the first time.*
redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *I reduce.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
superō, 1, *I surpass; am superior to;* governs the acc.
talentum, ī, n., *a talent* (about $1200).
vēndō, ere, didī, ditus, *I sell.*
vīgintī, indecl., *twenty.*

143. 1. Hostēs numerō superābant. 2. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus profectus est. 3. Caesar paucīs annīs ante prīmum in Galliam vēnerat. 4. Turris decem pedibus quam mūnītiō altior fuit. 5. Haec domus vīgintī talentīs vēndita est. 6. Cum frātre meō domum rediī. 7. Proelium equestre paucīs ante diēbus factum erat. 8. Nōnne hī magistrātūs summā fidē dignī sunt? 9. Tribus annīs post Rōmam vēnit. 10. Paulō post hās īnsulās sub potestātem nostram redēgimus. 11. Gallī cum māgnā manū hōc oppidum oppūgnāre incipiunt.

144. 1. Your brother arrived a little before; you yourself a little afterwards. 2. This horse surpasses all others in speed. 3. The magistrate sold his house for ten talents and departed from the city. 4. He is a boy of great diligence. 5. The tree is three feet higher than the building. 6. The Romans are few in number. 7. Cato was a man of matchless dignity and influence. 8. Caesar led his cavalry with two legions of infantry across the river. 9. This state was of great influence among the Gauls. 10. That plan was much better.

LESSON XLVIII.

THE ABLATIVE. — THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. — LOCATIVE USES: TIME AND PLACE. — THE LOCATIVE.

§§ 227, 1, 2; 228 and 1, *a*; 229, 1 and 1, *a*; 230; 231; 232, 1.

145. VOCABULARY.

agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *I pass, spend.*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I lose.*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I yield, withdraw.*
Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus,* a man's name.
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead away.*
dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *I abandon, desert.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune;* pl., **fortūnae, ārum,** f., *fortune* (possessions).
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush.*
Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
Pompējus, Pompēī, m., *Pompey,* a man's name.
proximus, a, um, *next* (§ 73, 1).

146. 1. Pompējō, Crassō cōnsulibus, Germānī Rhēnum flūmen trānsiērunt. 2. Hīs nātiōnibus superātīs, Caesar in hīberna rediit. 3. Sex annīs fortūnās omnēs āmīsit. 4. Eā nocte legiōnēs ē castrīs dēdūxit. 5. Proximō annō tū eris cōnsul. 6. Ūnum diem Genēvae mānsistī. 7. Hīs locīs erant māximae silvae. 8. Eō tempore dē salūte nostrā dēspērāvit. 9. Rōmā in Galliam contendit. 10. Ab Italiā Athēnās Kalendīs veniam. 11. Illō diē mē dēseruistī. 12. Hostēs, īnsidiīs in silvīs collocātīs, adventum Rōmānōrum exspectābant.

147. 1. He had spent five years at Rome. 2. On that night we discovered an ambush of the Gauls.

3. We returned from Rome to Athens. 4. In the consulship of Marcus Cicero, Pompey returned to Rome. 5. He set out immediately from Athens. 6. Within five years Caesar conquered ten large tribes and reduced all Gaul to a province. 7. On the next day Cato was chosen consul. 8. When Fortune is adverse there is no great hope of victory. 9. Having lost this large fleet, Caesar returned from Britain to the coast of Gaul.

148. THE TROJAN HORSE.

Ducēs Graecōrum fātīs repulsī equum aedificant īnstar[1] montis. In hōc virōs armātōs condunt. Ipsī ā Trōjā abeunt.

Trōjānī locōs vident dēsertōs. Itaque portās pandunt, exeunt, equum mīrantur, quem dēnique intrā mūrōs dūcunt.

Nox erat et omnēs Trōjānī somnum placidum carpēbant, cum Graecī in equō inclūsī claustra laxābant atque ipsī exībant. Invādunt urbem somnō sepultam et Trōjānōs occīdunt. Sīc Trōja dēlēta est.

---

[1] **Instar montis**: *as large as a mountain;* rhetorical exaggeration.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

LESSON XLIX.

ADJECTIVES.

§§ 236, 1; 237; 239; 240, 1, 2; 241, 1, 2.

149. VOCABULARY.

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I approach, come.*
coniciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *I hurl, cast.*
cursus, ūs, m., *course, speed.*
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *I encourage.*
invītus, a, um, *unwilling.*
māgnitūdō, inis, f., *size.*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I accomplish.*
plērīque, aeque, aque, *most, very many.*
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *I promise.*
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I enjoin upon.*
prōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *I throw forward, cast.*
respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus, *I answer, reply.*
tueor, ērī, *I guard, protect.*

150. 1. Plērōsque lēgātōs ab hōc colloquiō invītōs abeuntēs vīdimus. 2. Crassus prīmus accessit. 3. Haec laetus crēdidī. 4. Ab īmō colle māgnō cursū ad flūmen contendērunt. 5. Ē mediīs castrīs tēla conjēcērunt. 6. Tibi multa respondī. 7. Pauca meministī. 8. Plēraque dē māgnitūdine hārum silvārum audīvimus. 9. Omnia, quae mihi praecēpistī, perfēcī. 10. Hī sē ad pedēs imperātōris prōjēcērunt. 11. Caesar suōs hortābātur. 12. Invītus illa scrīpsī. 13. Omnēs bonī cīvitātem tuentur. 14. Omnia pollicēris; nihil perficis.

151. 1. The good are always beautiful. 2. Pompey drew up his troops on the top of the mountain. 3. Caesar was always the first to enter the battle and the last to withdraw. 4. We were informed of these things at the end of summer. 5. The horse was very swift. 6. Such delays are becoming much too frequent. 7. He most unwillingly promised us[1] this. 8. He joyfully approached. 9. In the last portion of the winter Caesar returned to Rome. 10. He encouraged his (soldiers) and ordered them to guard this camp.

LESSON L.

PRONOUNS.

§§ 242, 1, 2; 243, 1; 245; 246, 1, 4; 249, 1; 253, 1, 2.

152. VOCABULARY.

commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *I move, touch.*
cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I flee for refuge.*
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *I differ.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I escape.*
mereor, ērī, itus sum, *I deserve.*
misericordia, ae, f., *pity.*
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, *I overwhelm.*
perfugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I flee.*
sciō, īre, scīvī, scītus, *I know.*
subeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *I approach.*
vīs, vis, f. (acc. **vim,** § 41), *violence.*

153. 1. Alius perfūgit, alius captus est. 2. Tuā meī memoriā commōtus sum. 3. Tua nostrī misericordia patrem meum commōvit. 4. Aliī gladiīs, aliī

---

[1] This means 'to us,' and must be rendered in Latin accordingly.

tēlīs pūgnābant. 5. Māxima pars eōrum cōnfūgit. 6. Alter interfectus est, alter effūgit. 7. Aliī aliud merentur. 8. Multī vestrum haec eadem sciunt. 9. Nōs vī ipsā oppressit. 10. Gallī īnstitūtīs et lēgibus inter sē differēbant. 11. Vāllum ipsum subeāmus.

154. 1. Orgetorix ordered the Helvetians and Sequani to give hostages to each other. 2. On that very night this noble prisoner escaped. 3. One fears the enemy, another the violence of his friends. 4. I blame Cicero, and Cicero blames me. 5. Each of us deserves the praise of the king. 6. We have long contended with each other (between ourselves). 7. Caesar was killed by his own friends. 8. One praises one thing, another another. 9. Our (men) were frightened by the great multitude of these ships.

LESSON LI.

Review.

155. 1. In eō proeliō minus ducentī mīlitēs interfectī sunt. 2. Hae nātiōnēs propter dissēnsiōnēs possessiōnibus suīs expulsae sunt. 3. Opus est celeritāte. 4. Equitēs portīs ēruptiōnem faciunt. 5. Hostēs equitēs nostrōs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. 6. Paucīs ante diēbus profectī sumus. 7. Haec cīvitās erat māgnā auctōritāte. 8. Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur. 9. Ille dīgnus est fidē. 10. Athēnīs morābāmur. 11. In Italiam vēnimus. 12. Gallī mediā nocte ex castrīs ēgressī sunt. 13. Ipsa locī nātūra perīculum repellēbat. 14. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī vāllum subeunt.

SYNTAX OF THE MOODS.

LESSON LII.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES: JUSSIVE, HORTATORY, DELIBERATIVE, PROHIBITIVE.

§§ 272; 273; 274; 275, 1; 276 and *c*; 277 and *a*.

156. VOCABULARY.

addō, ere, idī, itus, *I add.*
aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*
committō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I bring together;* with **proelium** or **pūgnam,** *to join battle.*
cōnsīdō, ere, ēdī, essum, *I settle.*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, *I cease.*
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I let go, dismiss, disband.*
expedītus, a, um, *unencumbered, light-armed.*
hīc, *here.*
nē, *not.*
ōrō, 1, *I beseech.* [*retain.*
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *I*
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *I take.*

157. 1. Omnia faciāmus quae frāter tuus ōrāvit. 2. Quid dīcat? 3. Quid dīcerent? 4. Germānī agrōs Gallōrum nē vexent! 5. Hanc occāsiōnem nē dīmittant. 6. Nōlīte proelium aliēnō locō committere! 7. Amīcum meum nōn dēfenderem? 8. Omnēs proeliō dēsistant! 9. Nōlī hanc pecūniam sūmere! 10. Mōrēs atque disciplīnam mājōrum retineāmus! 11. Quārē

hīc nōn cōnsīdāmus? 12. Hīs legiōnibus decem cohortēs expedītae addantur.

158. 1. Let us beseech the gods. 2. Let them join battle with the enemy. 3. Do not let the prisoners go. 4. Let us press on bravely. 5. Do not refuse the reward which I promised you. 6. Let him write this letter immediately. 7. Do not approve such words. 8. What am I to send? 9. Let us not forget our friends. 10. What was this youth to do? 11. Are we not to resist this man? 12. Let him take the money and go.

159. THE HAUNTED HOUSE. PART I.

Erat Athēnīs domus spatiōsa, sed per silentium noctis sonus ferrī et vinculōrum ibi audiēbātur; mox appārēbat īdōlon, senex prōmissā barbā.[1] Manibus[2] catēnās gerēbat et quatiēbat.[3]

Hinc domus dēserta et illī īdōlō relīcta est.

Vēnit Athēnās philosophus, Athēnodōrus, lēgit titulum, omnia[4] docētur, ac nihilōminus domum condūcit.

Ubi coepit[5] advesperāscere, poscit stilum et lūmen; servōs suōs in interiōra[6] dīmittit; ipse ad[7] librum animum et oculōs intendit.

---

[1] **prōmissā barbā**: *with a long beard;* § 224.
[2] **Manibus**: *on its hands.* [3] **quatiēbat**: *shook them.*
[4] **omnia**: § 178, 1, *b* and 2. [5] **ubi coepit**: *when it began.*
[6] **in interiōra**: *into the inner part (of the house).*
[7] **ad**: *upon.*

LESSON LIII.

The Optative and Potential Subjunctives.—The Imperative.

§§ 279, 1, 2; 280 and 2; 281, and 1, 2.

160. VOCABULARY.

animus, ī, m., *courage, heart.*
āvertō, ere, tī, versus, *I avert, turn aside.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *I know, understand.*
jūs, jūris, n., *right, authority.*
patior, patī, passus sum, *I suffer; endure.*
patria, ae, f., *country, fatherland.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*

161. 1. Dēfendite, cīvēs, salūtem commūnem! 2. Patria nostra injūriam nē patiātur! 3. Cōnsulēs summum jūs habentō. 4. Utinam tam longum tempus in hīs labōribus nē cōnsūmpsissēmus! 5. Imperātōrī vestrō, mīlitēs, operam date! 6. Utinam hī mīlitēs animō meliōre essent. 7. Ista vix patiar. 8. Haec perīcula ā nōbis āvertantur. 9. Nēmō hōc cōnsilium facile intellegat.

162. 1. May the gods avert this danger. 2. Would that Caesar were present. 3. I should wish to understand this affair better. 4. No one would praise such men. 5. He would endure wounds without fear. 6. Would that Cicero had not been killed. 7. Remember your fatherland! 8. O that the battle may not be unfavorable to the Romans. 9. We should not believe this report. 10. Leave the city and return home. 11. Would that the pass were not so narrow. 12. May you always be happy and contented.

LESSON LIV.

Moods in Dependent Clauses.—The Subjunctive of Purpose.—Sequence of Tenses.

§§ 282, 1, and *a*, 2; 258; 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3.

163. VOCABULARY.

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania,* a district of Gaul.
commūniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *I strongly fortify.*
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *I unite.*
fruor, fruī, *I enjoy* (§ 218, 1).
līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*
nē, *lest; that . . . not; in order that . . . not.*
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *I put, place, establish;* **castra pōnere,** *pitch a camp.*
quō, conj., *in order that.*
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *I remain.*
tantus, a, um, *so great.*
ut, *that, in order that.*

164. 1. Caesar proelium commīsit, nē exercitūs mājorēs convenīrent. 2. Haec fēcimus ut līberī essēmus. 3. Castra in locīs superiōribus posuit, nē quis ea facile oppūgnāret. 4. Paucī remānsērunt, ut suspīciōnem timōris vītārent. 5. Caesar hominēs dēlēgit quī castra commūnīrent. 6. Haec facimus ut lībertāte fruāmur. 7. Galbam captīvīs praefēcit, nē quis[1] effugeret. 8. Quō iter expedītius faceret, impedīmenta relīquit. 9. Crassus in Aquītāniam proficīscitur nē tantae gentēs conjungantur. 10. Castra fossā mūnīvimus quō facilius dēfendere possēmus.

---

[1] In Latin, 'in order that no one' is rendered by **nē quis** (not by **ut nēmō**), and 'in order that no' is rendered by **nē ūllus** (not by **ut nūllus**).

165. 1. Caesar left one legion behind in order that it might guard the camp. 2. We drive out the barbarians in order that you may enjoy peace and good fortune. 3. He fortified the town in order that the citizens might more easily resist the enemy. 4. Unite your forces lest the Germans overwhelm you. 5. The light-armed cavalry preceded the army in order that they might more quickly unite themselves with the allies. 6. They will flee in order that they may not be killed. 7. They had fortified a town to which they might flee for refuge.

166. THE HAUNTED HOUSE. PART II.

Prīmō tantum[1] silentium noctis; deinde Athēnodōrus sonum ferrī et vinculōrum audit. Respicit atque videt imāginem dē quā audierat. Haec stābat et digitō innuēbat.

Sine morā Athēnodōrus lūmen tollit et sequitur.

Imāgō lentō gradū ībat, quasi vinculīs gravis. Postquam in āream dēflexit, repente dēlāpsa Athēnodōrum dēserit. Posterō diē magistrātūs adit; eōs monet ut[2] jubeant illum locum effodī. Inveniuntur ossa hominis catēnīs innexa.

---

[1] **tantum**: lit. *only; i.e.* there was only.
[2] **ut jubeant**: *that they bid.*

LESSON LV.

Clauses of Characteristic. — Result Clauses. — Causal Clauses.

§§ 283, 1, 2; 284, 1; 285; 286, 1, 2.

167. VOCABULARY.

alius, a, ud, *else.*
appropinquō, 1, *I approach.*
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, *consist.*
cum, conj., *since.*
dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *I despise.*
ita, *so.*
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
putō, 1, *I think.*
quod, *because, on the ground that.*
quoniam, conj., *inasmuch as.*

168. 1. Tē accūsāvit quod hostibus nōn resisterēs. 2. Quis est quī haec putet? 3. Hostēs ācriter pūgnāvērunt, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. 4. Quod nēmō alius aderat, nōs accūsāre ausus est. 5. Quoniam Germānī appropinquant, castra movēbimus. 6. Quae cum ita sint, in hōc locō manēbimus. 7. Hōc acciderat quod Gallī legiōnem nostram propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant. 8. Hīc locus tālis erat ut nostrī dēfendere facile possent. 9. Caesar Gallōs accūsat quod ab eīs nōn sublevētur. 10. Hostēs ita perterritī sunt ut in silvās perfugerent.

169. 1. No one who neglects his duty will be a great man. 2. Since these things were so, we remained there. 3. What man is so base as not to love his country? 4. The soldiers approached so swiftly that we could not escape. 5. Caesar had blockaded the

narrow passes of the mountains so that the Helvetians could not go out from their own territory. 6. We fear the Germans because they are many in number and very brave. 7. Inasmuch as Pompey had remained with them, they feared nothing. 8. There is (only) one man whom I despise. 9. There are many who know these things.

LESSON LVI.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY **postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac,** ETC. — CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY **cum.**

§§ 287; 288, 1, A, B; 289.

170. VOCABULARY.

animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *I notice.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *I learn.*
cum, conj., *when.*
ēiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *I thrust out;* **sē ēicere,** *rush forth.*
petō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus, *I seek, request.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I take back, receive;* with reflexive **sē,** *to retreat.*
simul ac (atque), *as soon as.*
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I withdraw, lead away.*
ubi, rel. adv., *when.*
ut, rel. adv., *when.*

171. 1. Gallī cum nostrōs vīdissent, in silvās fūgērunt. 2. Ut equitātus noster sē in agrōs ējēcit, hostēs ex silvīs exībant. 3. Eō diē cum tū in senātū locūtus es plūrimī aderant. 4. Cum veniēs, cognōscēs. 5. Simul ac tē vīdī, auxilium tuum ōrāvī. 6. Caesar post-

quam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās in collem proximum subdūxit. 7. Cum haec audīvisset, abiit. 8. Caesar ubi id comperit, sē in Galliam celeriter recēpit. 9. Cum ad id oppidum accessisset, puerī mulierēsque pācem petīvērunt.

172. 1. As soon as he noticed the man, he went away. 2. After we had been thrust out of Rome, I went to Athens. 3. When he returns, I will tell him the suspicions which I have. 4. As soon as the Romans advanced, the Gauls retreated. 5. When the right wing surrendered, the rest of the army fled. 6. When he heard these words, he was greatly terrified. 7. After the cavalry had been overwhelmed, Ariovistus withdrew his forces across the Rhine. 8. In that year when Cicero was consul these plots were discovered.

173. THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES.

Dāmoclēs, quīdam ex assentātōribus Dionȳsiī, tyrannī Syrācūsānī, opēs ējus et māgnificentiam commemorābat. "Vīsne igitur" inquit "fortūnam meam experīrī?" Tum tyrannus jussit Dāmoclem in lectō aureō collocārī. Aderant unguenta et corōnae; mēnsae epulīs exquīsītīs atque vīnō īnstruēbantur. Dāmoclēs sibi fortūnātus vidēbātur. Sed in mediō apparātū gladium super caput suum sētā equīnā pendentem vidēbat. Itaque nē[1] manum quidem in[2] mēnsam

---

[1] **ne . . . quidem** : *not even.*
[2] **in mēnsam** : *toward the table.*

porrigere audēbat, atque tyrannum ōrāvit ut sibi licēret abīre.

LESSON LVII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY **Antequam** AND **Priusquam**; CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY **Dum, Dōnec,** AND **Quoad.**

§§ 291, 1, 2; 292; 293, I, II, III, 1, 2.

174. VOCABULARY.

agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *I do.*
antequam, conj., *before.*
Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*
dēlīberō, 1, *I deliberate, consult.*
Domitius, ī (iī), m., *Domitius,* a man's name.
dum, *while; until.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
Massilia, ae, f., *Marseilles.*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *I convey.*
priusquam, conj., *before.*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *I feel, perceive.*

175. 1. Sex diēs exspectāvimus dum tū advenīrēs. 2. Nōn prius fugā dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt. 3. Hunc collem occupat priusquam ab adversāriīs sentiātur. 4. Caesar priusquam in Britanniam proficīscerētur, nāvēs omnibus rēbus īnstrūxit. 5. Dum haec inter eōs agnntur, Domitius Massiliam pervēnit. 6. Caesar exspectāvit dum haec mandāta ad hostēs perferrentur. 7. Nōn profectī sumus priusquam tē dē cōnsiliīs nostrīs certiōrem fēcimus. 8. Dum cōpiae conveniunt, cum tribūnīs dēlīberāvit.

---

[1] **ut sibi licēret**: lit. *that it be permitted to himself,* i.e. *that he be permitted.*

176. 1. The commander waited until the whole army should cross the river. 2. While the Romans were advancing Ariovistus was conferring with the other chiefs. 3. Caesar will wait until the rest of the legions arrive. 4. While Domitius was absent from Rome his slaves fled. 5. Before the captives could beseech the barbarians (for) this they were killed. 6. He spoke before he saw us. 7. I shall remain at Marseilles until you come. 8. Before I go I shall remind the senate of these dangers. 9. You departed before I accomplished these things.

LESSON LVIII.

Review.

177. 1. Nōlīte haec facere! 2. Quārē hīc diūtius maneāmus? 3. Fīliī mandāta patris suī perficiant! 4. Timor mentēs vestrās nē occupet! 5. Quid aliud facerēmus? 6. Utinam tē vīdissem! 7. Utinam hostēs nē adessent! 8. Nēmō haec crēdat. 9. Proficīscere ex hāc urbe! 10. Multōs labōrēs passus sum ut tē dēfenderem. 11. Hīc remānsī, quō auxiliō ējus diūtius ūterer. 12. Castella ibi collocāvit nē Gallī suōs circumvenīre possent. 13. Quis est quī haec dīcere audeat? 14. Amīcī meī tantā sunt dīligentiā ut nihil neglegant. 15. Hostēs simul atque sīgna nostra vīdērunt, nūntiōs mīsērunt, quī pācem peterent.

LESSON LIX.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES: CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE JUSSIVE; CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF HINDERING.

§§ 295, 1, 2, 4; 295, 3.

178. VOCABULARY.

dēcernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *I decree.*
itaque, *accordingly, and so.*
nē, *from* (after verbs of hindering).
omnīnō, *altogether;* with negatives, *at all.*
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I permit, grant* (§ 187, II).
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *I hinder, prevent.*
quōminus, *from* (after verbs of hindering).
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *I give back, return.*
rēiciō, ere, rējēcī, jectus, *I hurl back.*
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *I [restore.*

179. 1. Mīlitibus imperāvī ut hōc oppidum oppūgnārent. 2. Mē prohibuit quōminus haec restituerem. 3. Eīs imperat nē hōc flūmen trānseant. 4. Eōs prohibuī nē excēderent. 5. Dēcrēvimus ut hae legiōnēs Rhēnum trānsportārentur. 6. Ariovistus equitibus suīs permīsit ut agrōs Gallōrum vexārent. 7. Itaque Caesar suīs praecēpit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. 8. Senātus dēcrēvit ut Caesar legiōnēs suās dīmitteret. 9. Hostēs prohibuimus quōminus Rhodanum trānsīrent.

180. 1. He demands that the hostages be returned. 2. I asked him to return the money to me. 3. Cicero warned the senate not to neglect these dangers. 4. I

permitted (to) him to retain his sword. 5. The senate decreed that Cicero should defend the state. 6. Caesar determined that his troops should join battle immediately. 7. Death prevented him from becoming consul. 8. The light-armed horsemen hindered the Helvetians from bringing together sufficient grain and forage. 9. He persuaded me to remain at Marseilles.

LESSON LX.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE OPTATIVE. — SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT. — INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§§ 296, 1, 2; 297, 1, 2; 300, 1, *a*, *b*.

181. VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, prep. w. abl., *from, of.*
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I do, bring about.*
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
-ne, enclitic interrog. particle; in indirect questions, *whether.*
num, in indirect questions, *whether.*
optō, 1, *I desire.*
prīmō, *first, firstly.*
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *I inquire.*
quantus, a, um, *how great?*
rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus, *I tear down.*
sīc, *so.*
tergum, ī, n., *back.*
ut, w. verbs of fearing, *that not.*
vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *I turn;* **terga vertere**, *flee.*

182. 1. Eōs rogāvī num Germānī Rhēnum jam trānsiissent. 2. Timeō nē nostrī perfugiant. 3. Prīmō ā tē quaerō hūjusne lēgātiōnis prīnceps sīs. 4. Caesar māgnopere timēbat nē suī perfugerent. 5. Eādem nocte

accidit ut lūna plēna esset. 6. Timēmus ut legiōnēs impetum barbarōrum sustineant. 7. Ab hīs perfugīs quaesīvī quae et quantae cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 8. Optāmus ut lībērī sītis. 9. Sīc effēcit ut hunc rēgem in potestāte suā habēret. 10. Praetereā verēbātur nē hostēs pontem rescinderent. 11. Ita factum est ut hostēs statim terga verterent.

183. 1. I desire that he may not find me here. 2. It happened that he had remained in the city on that day. 3. We brought it about that this danger was averted from the citizens. 4. He fears that we will not go with him.[1] 5. He desires that we seek another home with our wives and children. 6. I asked him what he was doing with the money. 7. First he asked whether he ought to praise these boys. 8. It cannot[2] be determined in which year Caesar was born. 9. It happened that ships and men were lacking.

184. THE BOY AND THE DOLPHIN. PART I.

Est in Āfricā colōnia, marī proxima; adjacet stāgnum, in quō puerī natant. Ille puer est victor quī aequālēs longissimē[3] relinquit.

In hōc certāmine puer quīdam cēterīs[4] audācior in ulteriōra[5] tendēbat. Delphīnus occurrit et nunc prae-

---

[1] 'With him': *secum;* § 244, II; 142, 4.
[2] 'It cannot': *nōn potest.* [3] **longissimē**: *farthest behind.*
[4] **cēterīs audācior**: *bolder than the rest;* § 217.
[5] **in ulteriōra**: *to a greater distance.*

cēdit puerum, nunc sequitur, nunc circumit; postrēmō subit prōfertque in altum; mox reddit terrae et aequālibus.

LESSON LXI.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — CLAUSES WITH **Quamvīs** AND **Quamquam**.

§§ 301; 302, 1; 303; 304, 1; 309; 309, 1, 2, 3.

185. VOCABULARY.

Atticus, ī, m., *Atticus.*
cum, conj., *though.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
mors, tis, f., *death.*
nisi, *unless.*
pateō, ēre, uī, *lie open.*
quamquam, *although.*
quamvīs, *though, although.*
sī, *if.*
valeō, ēre, uī, valitūrus, *I avail, prevail.*

186. 1. Quamvīs nēmō veniat, manēbō. 2. Sī mīlitēs bonō animō sunt, est spēs victōriae. 3. Atticus honōrēs nōn petiit, cum eī patērent. 4. Sī Rōmam veniēs, mē vidēbis. 5. Quamvīs victōria incerta sit, ducem nē dēserāmus. 6. Sī Rōmam veniātis, nōs videātis. 7. Sī mihi hōc dīxisses, nōn profectus essem. 8. Rōmānī, quamquam vulneribus cōnfectī erant, impetum hostium sustinēbant. 9. Mors nōn est timenda, sī animus immortālis est. 10. Nisi auctōritās mea valuisset, nunc līberī nōn essēmus.

187. 1. If you withdraw[1] from the fort, you will be killed by the enemy. 2. Would you wish to remain here if you could? 3. Unless you reply,[1] I shall

---

[1] § 261, 2.

not write to you. 4. If he had arrived one day before, he would have seen the king. 5. Though he may be very courageous, he will not always conquer. 6. Caesar did not permit us to return home, although we desired to do so. 7. If my father were here, I should be quite happy. 8. If the embassy comes to[1] him before the Kalends of April, the battle will not occur.

188. THE BOY AND THE DOLPHIN. PART II.

Serpit per colōniam fāma; concurrunt omnēs; puerum interrogant, audiunt,[2] nārrant.[3] Posterō diē lītus obsident, prōspectant mare. Natant puerī, inter hōs ille,[4] sed cautius.

Delphīnus rūrsus ad puerum venit. Fugit ille cum cēterīs. Delphīnus puerum invītat et revocat. Puer iterum tergō īnsilit; fertur atque refertur. Neuter timet, neuter timētur.

LESSON LXII.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

§§ 314, 1; 270, 1, *a–c*; 318.

189. VOCABULARY.

amīcus, a, um, *friendly.*
arbitror, trārī, trātus sum, *I consider.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *I collect.*
exīstimō, 1, *I think, consider.*
incolō, ere, coluī, cultus, *I inhabit.*
īnfīrmus, a, um, *weak.*
teneō, ēre, uī, *I hold.*

---

[1] § 261, 2. [2] **audiunt**: *hear* (*his story*).
[3] **nārrant**: *tell* (*the story to others*). [4] **ille**: *i.e.* the boy.

190. 1. Nēmō putat hōc oppidum expūgnārī posse. 2. Nūntiātur Gallōs eum collem, quem occupāverint, commūnīvisse. 3. Nūntiātum est Gallōs eum collem commūnīvisse quem occupāvissent. 4. Caesar intellēxit Ariovistum sē castrīs tenēre. 5. Nūntius dīxit montem, quem Caesar occupārī voluisset, ab hostibus tenērī. 6. Exīstimō hās legiōnēs, quae modo advēnerint, īnfīrmās esse. 7. Caesar arbitrābātur hās cīvitātēs sibi amīcās esse. 8. Num putāvistis eōs, quī hōs agrōs incolerent, discessūrōs esse?

191. 1. I consider that those who inhabit Italy are fortunate. 2. Do you think that Caesar was a good man? 3. I said that the Helvetians who left their homes were conquered by Caesar. 4. I think that Athens will never be a larger city than Rome. 5. He says that Lentulus and his friends had resolved to set Rome on fire. 6. They thought that the Germans had departed by another road. 7. I have said that the fortune of war is always uncertain. 8. He thought that when he arrived at Athens, which is[1] a large and beautiful city, he would be happy and contented.

---

[1] § 314, 3.

LESSON LXIII.

The Infinitive.

§§ 326; 327, 1; 328, 1, 2; 329; 330; 331, I, II; 335.

192. VOCABULARY.

cōnstat, impers., *it is evident.*
jūstus, a, um, *just.*
necesse est, impers., *it is necessary.*
revertor, I (§ 114, 3), *I return.*

193. 1. Necesse erat multa eōdem tempore facere. 2. Hae legiōnēs ex hībernīs ēgredī nōn ausae sunt. 3. In proeliō necesse est fortem esse. 4. Hostēs ex omnibus partibus lapidēs in vāllum conicere. 5. Volumus jūstī esse. 6. Cōnāminī bonī esse. 7. Oportet nōs statim proficīscī. 8. Jussit nāvēs comparārī. 9. Mīlitēs jussit ōrdinēs servāre. 10. Cōnstat māgnum numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse. 11. Necesse est nōs haec castra commūnīre. 12. Nōnne licet in urbem revertī?

194. 1. It is the duty of Roman soldiers to fight bravely for their leader and their country. 2. It is often necessary to ask kindnesses of our friends. 3. The senate decided to send two legions to Pompey. 4. It is evident that the Romans are braver than the Germans. 5. Many men think that Caesar will never return to Rome. 6. The commander ordered the cavalry to ravage the fields of the Sequani. 7. It behooves me to go immediately into Spain. 8. The

soldiers do not dare to attack Ariovistus because of the size of his forces.

195. "If You Want a Thing Done, —."

Avicula est parva; nōmen est cassīta. Habitat in segetibus. Quaedam cassīta, cum īret cibum[1] pullīs quaesītum, monēbat eōs ut[2] animadverterent, sī[3] quid novī fieret.

Dominus agrī posteā fīlium vocat. "Vidēsne?" inquit, "Hōc frūmentum jam mātūrum est. Idcircō amīcōs rogā ut[4] veniant atque nōs adjuvent." Pullī hōc audiunt atque ōrant mātrem ut sē[5] in alium locum portet. Māter jubet eōs ā timōre ōtiōsōs esse. "Sī enim dominus," inquit, "amīcīs fīdit, crās seges nōn metētur."

Diē posterō igitur māter in pābulum volat. Sōl fervet, diēs abit, nec[6] ūllī amīcī ad dominum veniunt.

Tum dominus rūrsus ad fīlium, "Amīcī istī," inquit, "cessātōrēs sunt. Prīmā lūce affer falcēs et nōs ipsī manibus nostrīs crās metēmus."

Ubi māter ex pullīs id audīvit, "Tempus," inquit, "cēdendī[7] et abeundī."

Itaque cassīta migrāvit et seges ā dominō ipsō atque fīliō dēmessa est.

---

[1] **cibum pullīs quaesītum**: *to seek food for its young.*
[2] **ut animadverterent**: *to notice.*
[3] **sī quid novī**: *if anything new*, lit. *of new;* § 201, 2.
[4] **ut veniant**: *to come.* [5] **sē**: *them*, the birds.
[6] **nec ūllī**: *and no*, lit. *nor any.*
[7] **cēdendī**: *to be withdrawing*, lit. *of withdrawing.*

LESSON LXIV.

PARTICIPLES.

§§ 336, 1, 2, 3, 4; 337, 2, 4.

VOCABULARY.

cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, danger.*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *I see.*
experior, īrī, pertus sum, *I try, test.*
fugō, 1, *I put to flight.*
labōrō, 1, *I toil;* in battle, *be hard pressed.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *I drive back.*
perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *I lose.*
submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I send, despatch.*
Tarquinius, ī (iī), m., *Tarquin*, a Roman king.

197. 1. Hīc mīles in prīmā aciē pūgnāns interfectus est. 2. Multīs vulneribus cōnfectī, ducem nōn dēseruimus. 3. Nostrī hostēs ex castrīs ēgredientēs adortī sunt. 4. Vocātus statim vēnit. 5. Equitēs pulsōs fugāvimus.[1] 6. Virtūtem vestram, mīlitēs, multīs proeliīs expertus, vōs nunc ad aliōs cāsūs vocō. 7. Tarquinius Ardeam oppūgnāns rēgnum perdidit. 8. Hōs captīvōs tuendōs relīquit. 9. Eīs, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexit, subsidium submīsit.

198. 1. The Romans attacking sharply routed the enemy. 2. Tarquin, thrust out of the city by the people, returned with an army. 3. Departing from Italy, I set out for Marseilles. 4. Caesar, fearing an

---

[1] Lit. 'we routed . . . having been driven back'; *i.e.* we drove back and routed.

ambush, withdrew. 5. Ariovistus advanced, ravaging the fields and setting the towns on fire. 6. He says that he will delay ten days, awaiting aid from his allies. 7. Cicero having spoken a few words had touched the hearts of the citizens.

LESSON LXV.

THE GERUND. — THE GERUNDIVE. — THE SUPINE.

§§ 338, 1, *a–c*; 338, 3; 338, 4, *a*, *b*; 340, 1, 2.

199. VOCABULARY.

alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I go ahead, precede.*
causā, abl., *for the sake of;* the dependent genitive precedes **causā.**
cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *I follow up.*
explōrō, 1, *I examine.*
iter, itineris, n., *way.*
praedō, ōnis, m., *robber;* **praedō maritimus,** *pirate.*
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *I render, make.*
Themistoclēs, is, m., *Themistocles,* an Athenian statesman.
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*

200. 1. Haec dīcendō mīlitēs ad pūgnandum alacriōrēs effēcit. 2. Tempus ad proelium committendum aliēnum fuit. 3. Hī lēgātī cum Caesare collocūtum vēnērunt. 4. Nūlla fuit occāsiō discēdendī. 5. Dux ipse ad itinera explōranda antecessit. 6. Urbis servandae causā māgnam[1] pecūniam dedimus. 7. Themistoclēs maritimōs praedōnēs cōnsectandō, mare

---

[1] The Latin has **māgna pecūnia,** where we say 'much money.'

tūtum[1] reddidit. 8. Ad hōc oppidum oppūgnandum ē silvīs ēgreditur. 9. Caesar in hīs locīs nāvium parandārum causā morābātur.

201. 1. This boy is fond of hearing everything[2] that is said. 2. The labor of following up the deserters was very great. 3. By fortifying the camp, Caesar kept off the Gauls. 4. By using great diligence we found out the names of the envoys. 5. Cicero wrote much concerning writing and speaking well. 6. It was the best thing to say. 7. It is a beautiful city to see. 8. The envoys were sent to Pompey to ask for peace.

LESSON LXVI.

Review.

202. 1. Ōrāmus ut fīnem dīcendī faciās. 2. Veritus est nē omnia āmitteret. 3. Timēmus ut nōbīs sit satis praesidī. 4. Tibi praecēpī nē haec officia neglegerēs. 5. Nōbīs imperat ut tēla parēmus. 6. Accidit ut paucī incolumēs redīrent. 7. Optāmus nē quis effugiat. 8. Tē rogāvī quem locum dēlēgissēs. 9. Caesar Ariovistum rogāvit quam ob rem Rhēnum trānsiisset. 10. Sī haec dīxissēs, laetus fuissem. 11. Intellegimus omnēs hominēs nātūrā lībertātem amāre. 12. Caesar intellegēbat quantō cum perīculō id fēcisset. 13. Bellī īnferendī causā ā Galliā in Britanniam īnsulam trānsiit.

---

[1] § 177, 2. [2] *Omnia ;* § 236, 1.

ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

ON

LESSONS I–XXXV.

LESSON I.

203. 1. To the province; of the provinces; of a province. 2. Daughters; to the daughter; of the daughter. 3. By victory; of victory; of victories. 4. To the islands; of the island; islands. 5. Of diligence; with diligence; to diligence. 6. Provinces; of the province; to the provinces. 7. By the troops; to the troops; of the troops. 8. The troops seize the province. 9. He reports the victory. 10. We praise the islands. 11. Lucretia guards her daughters. 12. I procure troops with the money. 13. He guards the coast of Gaul.

LESSON II.

204. 1. To the children; of the children; by the children. 2. Of the messenger; messengers; by messengers. 3. To the field; of the fields; to the fields. 4. Of the son; to the sons. 5. Of the boy; to the boy; of the boys. 6. The messengers report the number of victories. 7. I am a captive. 8. The boys are sons

of the Gaul. 9. The messengers are Latins. 10. The troops procure money and swords. 11. The Romans guard the prisoners.

LESSON III.

205. 1. A great war; of great wars; to the great war. 2. The neighboring towns; of a neighboring town; to the neighboring towns. 3. By many children; to many children; of many children. 4. Small numbers; by small numbers; of a small number. 5. Of the beautiful daughter; to beautiful daughters. 6. Good boys; to the good boy; to the good boys. 7. Many troops attack the town. 8. The number of prisoners is large. 9. The island is large and beautiful. 10. They get ready many beasts of burden and much forage. 11. The neighboring provinces contend in many battles. 12. The daughter of Lucretia is beautiful.

LESSON IV.

206. 1. Good fathers; to good fathers; of the good father. 2. To the great king; of the great king; of great kings. 3. To many consuls; of many consuls; many consuls. 4. To the praise of Caesar; by the praise of Caesar. 5. To the soldier; to the safety of the soldiers. 6. The father of the king; to the father of the king. 7. Peace and safety are the rewards of victory. 8. I present money to the father of the soldier. 9. The great king sets the captives free. 10. The little sons of the consul are hostages.

11. The Germans praise the valor of the Roman soldiers and entreat peace. 12. The valor of the commander is great.

LESSON V.

207. 1. High hills; of the high hills. 2. To the small fleet; of small fleets; to small fleets. 3. Of German tribes; to a German tribe; to German tribes. 4. Neighboring shores; to neighboring shores; of neighboring shores. 5. Of the citizens; of a citizen; to a citizen. 6. To the beautiful cities; of a beautiful city; of beautiful cities. 7. Ariovistus calls together the German cavalry. 8. The hills are large and high. 9. Terror seizes the minds of the citizens. 10. Caesar contends in battle with[1] Ariovistus and the Germans. 11. The Roman infantry seize the town. 12. Many German tribes entreat peace.

LESSON VI.

208. 1. To the large army; of large armies; with large armies. 2. To the right wing; of the right wing. 3. Of small things; by a small thing; concerning small things. 4. To the neighboring harbor; in[2] the neighboring harbor; of neighboring harbors. 5. Of the beautiful day; to a beautiful day; concern-

---

[1] Where 'with' is followed by a word referring to a person, the preposition *cum* must be used in Latin.

[2] English 'in' must regularly be rendered in Latin by the preposition *in*.

ing beautiful days. 6. Great hopes; of great hope; by great hope. 7. Caesar places the cavalry on the right wing. 8. By their valor and loyalty the troops win the victory. 9. Four legions with cavalry attack the town. 10. I am in doubt concerning the valor of the infantry. 11. The troops seize the harbors and ravage the coasts. 12. Marcus praises the loyalty of the soldiers.

LESSON VII.

209. 1. Of the whole senate; to the whole senate; concerning the whole senate. 2. On[1] another island; of another island. 3. Concerning other regions; of other regions. 4. Without any hope; any hopes; of any hope. 5. Of no harbors; to no harbor; in no harbor. 6. To no danger; of no dangers. 7. The Belgians lay waste the neighboring regions. 8. Without loyalty and valor there is no hope of safety. 9. The citizens avoid the dangers of war. 10. The Romans and Germans contend in[2] a cavalry battle. 11. The foot-soldiers announce the victory. 12. We praise the valor of the whole line of battle.

LESSON VIII.

210. 1. Of the noble young man; to noble young men; to a noble young man. 2. All men; to all men. 3. Of the common safety; concerning the common

---

[1] Express by *in*.

[2] Do not use any preposition to translate 'in'; the simple ablative is here sufficient.

safety; to the common safety. 4. Of an old friend; without an old friend; to old friends. 5. With the happy citizens; of happy citizens; to a happy citizen. 6. Such dangers; by such dangers; of such danger. 7. The senate presents beautiful standards to the legion. 8. A noble young man reports the victory to the senate. 9. Such honors are the reward of loyalty. 10. He places the cavalry in the other line of battle. 11. The Romans conquer powerful tribes without danger. 12. The whole army is happy on account of the victory.

LESSON IX.

211. 1. Of a more vigorous leader; to more vigorous leaders; of the most vigorous leader. 2. On account of the most severe penalties; of severer penalties; to a severer penalty. 3. Concerning the best man; of the best man; to a better man. 4. Of shorter lives; of the shortest life. 5. The nearest camp; of a nearer camp. 6. By the farther gate; of the farther gate. 7. Caesar is a better leader than Ariovistus. 8. There are many legions in the larger camp. 9. The Belgians are bravest of all the Gauls. 10. The soldiers attack the smaller camp. 11. We get ready very great forces.

LESSON X.

212. 1. Beautifully; more bravely; most often. 2. Most bravely; more nobly. 3. Of one city; to one chief. 4. With two hundred soldiers; of thirty towns;

to two hundred boys. 5. With two hundred horsemen; of a hundred slaves; to two hundred men. 6. Two hundred Romans defeat two thousand Gauls. 7. A hundred horsemen most easily check the attack of the enemy. 8. The soldiers fight more fiercely and bravely. 9. A thousand cavalry contend in battle. 10. We guard the three captives.

LESSON XII.

213. 1. Of thee; to me; without me; concerning thee; of me. 2. To us; of you; with us; to you; of us. 3. To thyself; of myself; concerning himself; of themselves; to myself. 4. Of my memory; by my kindness; to my slave. 5. To your kindnesses; of your wrongs; of your reward. 6. Of their arms; to his father; with her daughter. 7. The fleet explores these coasts and islands. 8. In this narrow pass Caesar defeats the Sequani. 9. He presents rewards to these noble young men 10. My soldiers easily avoid all these plots and dangers. 11. This father calls his daughters to himself. 12. Our horsemen fight with their swords.

LESSON XIII.

214. 1. Of the consul himself; to Caesar himself; with the soldiers themselves. 2. To the same man; with the same boy; of the same brothers. 3. To that battle; of those battles; by those horses. 4. To Lucretia herself; of you yourselves. 5. By those victories; of that opinion; to that slave. 6. He often

attempts the same thing. 7. On[1] the march itself the army easily procures grain and forage. 8. This legion passes the winter in the same camp. 9. The speed of that horse is great. 10. There are many slaves in that army. 11. In the same town are two hundred Gauls.

LESSON XIV.

215. 1. Of any one; to any one; with any one. 2. Of whom? to whom? 3. With a certain man; of a certain city; by certain kindnesses. 4. Of any river; to any shore; by any reward. 5. What man? What town? In what city? 6. Of any man you please; to any men you please. 7. The senate approves certain conditions of surrender. 8. Caesar calls a certain horseman to himself. 9. The commander praises the soldiers who attack this town. 10. Caesar calls the chiefs of these tribes to himself. 11. We seize a certain high hill.

LESSON XV.

216. 1. They were; we shall be; I have been. 2. He had been; thou art; I shall be. 3. We were; you will have been; thou wilt be. 4. They had been; we shall have been; you are. 5. Thou wast; you have been; I shall have been. 6. You will be; I was; thou hast been. 7. Where will the standards be? 8. I have often been in the trench. 9. Before this town was a large camp. 10. They have

---

[1] Use *in*.

been in this same city. 11. The men who announce the victory to the senate are swift horsemen. 12. There were high mountains in that province.

LESSON XVI.

217. 1. We should be; we should have been. 2. You would be; be ye; about to be. 3. They shall be; let us be. 4. May you be; ye shall be; to be. 5. To be about to be; be thou; thou wouldst have been. 6. Thou shalt be; to have been. 7. Under another commander the soldiers would not be contented. 8. Who would have praised these troops? 9. Let there be no peace between us. 10. Your advice would have been good. 11. You would be happier in another town.

LESSON XVII.

218. 1. They administer; he was administering; I shall administer. 2. He demands; you will demand; we had demanded. 3. Thou wilt have called; they have called; you call. 4. They were entreating; I entreat; we shall entreat. 5. They had approved; you will have approved; we have approved. 6. Why have the troops passed the winter in Gaul? 7. He who shall show kindness to a (fellow) citizen will win the reward. 8. You, (my) brave soldiers, have won the victory. 9. We have reported this battle. 10. Terror had seized the minds of all these men. 11. Who will approve that plan?

LESSON XVIII.

219. 1. We should have placed; let us place; they would place. 2. Praise ye; about to praise; to have praised. 3. Let him doubt; they would have doubted. 4. May I free; I should have freed. 5. To have refused; refusing; about to refuse; by refusing. 6. By fighting you would have conquered the enemy. 7. By attacking vigorously they would have conquered. 8. Let him attempt to free this city. 9. We should have attacked this town without any danger. 10. Refuse these rewards, soldiers!

LESSON XIX.

220. 1. We are blamed; I was blamed; they will be blamed. 2. It was announced; it has been announced. 3. You are freed; we shall be freed; I have been freed. 4. They have been checked; we were checked; he is checked. 5. I shall be guarded; we have been guarded; you have been guarded. 6. They were asked; I had been asked; we shall have been asked. 7. The number of our soldiers will be reported to the Germans. 8. You will all be praised. 9. These brave soldiers have not been defeated. 10. That victory will be announced. 11. Many towns of the Belgians and other Gauls had been assaulted. 12. Peace had been established with the neighboring states.

LESSON XX.

221. 1. Let them be placed; I should have been placed. 2. Let them be checked; they would have been checked. 3. I should have been asked; having been asked. 4. To have been called; they would have been called. 5. To be guarded; we should have been guarded. 6. To be approved; having been approved; to have been approved. 7. Such loyalty would scarcely have been expected. 8. Let the customs and discipline of our ancestors be preserved. 9. I should have attempted to free this prisoner. 10. Large armies must be got ready with the greatest speed. 11. Without you this town would not have been captured.

LESSON XXII.

222. 1. We remain; he has remained; you will remain. 2. Let him move; moving; move thou. 3. May I see; to have seen; they would have seen. 4. You order; we were ordering; about to order. 5. By ordering; they had ordered; I shall have ordered. 6. I had owed; we have owed; they were owing. 7. Let us increase the number of our foot-soldiers and cavalry. 8. I shall command you to remain in this town. 9. The opportune arrival of the general has increased the terror of our enemies. 10. These four legions will keep off the Germans. 11. Who moved the camp from this place? 12. I shall attempt to see you.

LESSON XXIII.

223. 1. I was kept away; let him be kept away; to have been kept away. 2. We had been terrified; they will have been terrified; he would have been terrified. 3. You are ordered; he had been ordered. 4. He has been ordered; they were ordered. 5. They have seemed; it seems; to seem. 6. The cavalry of the enemy had been seen in this place. 7. These barbarians seemed to be greatly terrified. 8. I appear to be about to remain here for a long time. 9. The number of the troops was quickly increased. 10. The onset of the barbarians had been bravely withstood by the Romans. 11. Let the loyalty of these citizens be increased by praise and rewards.

LESSON XXIV.

224. 1. Thou wast determining; he will determine; to have determined. 2. We distribute; you were distributing; they have distributed. 3. Let us distribute; distributing; by distributing. 4. He conquers; you will conquer; we were conquering. 5. I have conquered; they will have conquered; conquer ye. 6. You had left; they will leave; he was leaving. 7. Let them hasten immediately into that province. 8. Caesar had drawn up his troops on the plain in front of the fortification. 9. The Sequani were waging war with the Germans. 10. We determined to place our infantry behind the fortifications. 11. In the middle of the plain a large hill was seen.

LESSON XXV.

225. 1. He is led; I was led; thou wilt be led. 2. We are led; you were led; they will be led. 3. I shall be summoned; you will have been summoned; we have been summoned. 4. I had been sent; he has been sent; we shall have been sent. 5. May he be left; you would have been left; to be left. 6. The rest of the allies were left behind. 7. War will be waged against the Gauls. 8. All the grain had been consumed. 9. We shall be forced to fit out another fleet. 10. The legion which had already been sent against Ariovistus was conquered. 11. He would easily have led forth the infantry and drawn them up in a long line of battle.

LESSON XXVI.

226. 1. We discover; they were discovering; he will discover. 2. Let him discover; discovering; you would have discovered. 3. I was hindering; they have hindered; you will hinder. 4. To have hindered; of hindering; I should have hindered. 5. You hear; we shall hear; thou hast heard. 6. He will have heard; they had heard; hear ye. 7. All the legions will come together to the same place. 8. I shall afterwards fortify this camp. 9. The rest of the tribes come together from all sides and hinder the march of the Romans. 10. Let us hear the words of the great king. 11. You have already found out

the nature of this place. 12. He will come suddenly and quickly.

LESSON XXVII.

227. 1. It will be found; to have been found; it has been found. 2. We shall be hindered; I have been hindered. 3. We have been hindered; they will have been hindered. 4. I shall be heard; thou art heard; may you be heard. 5. We had been surrounded; you have been surrounded; they had been surrounded. 6. They rashly ran forward beyond the fortifications and were surrounded. 7. The voice of the people is not always the voice of God. 8. The children have been found in this forest. 9. Almost all the deserters will be discovered and led back. 10. That town is surrounded by a deep ditch. 11. The approach of the other cohorts has been hindered.

LESSON XXVIII.

228. 1. You capture; to be captured; may you be captured. 2. He was making; let him make; I shall make. 3. You will be received; we are received; we should have been received. 4. To have been received; let them be received; you are received. 5. He will be killed; he has killed; she had been killed; we had killed. 6. They retreated; he will retreat; to have retreated. 7. That woman was killed by this base man. 8. The army of Ariovistus retreated across the Rhine. 9. The bridge had been defended

by one brave soldier. 10. The barbarians who were plundering this province fled. 11. The slaves were led back to the city whence they had escaped. 12. Caesar surrounded and captured that whole tribe.

LESSON XXIX.

229. 1. I was attempting; we shall attempt; you have attempted. 2. They attempt; thou wilt attempt; he was attempting. 3. They have complained; you had complained; we shall have complained. 4. You will complain; he complains; we were complaining. 5. Let us march out; they have marched out; you would have marched out. 6. To have marched out; we should have marched out. 7. We have dared to attempt this journey. 8. They marched out with their arms and standards. 9. Caesar was conferring with Ariovistus concerning the terms of surrender. 10. Ariovistus attempted to call together the German tribes. 11. After five months the Helvetians were compelled to return to their own territory.

LESSON XXX.

230. 1. We are about to call; he will be about to call; they had been about to call. 2. The old institutions and manners must be preserved. 3. He had been about to hand over the royal power to Caesar. 4. The Germans who had remained across the Rhine were about to send aid to Ariovistus. 5. He is about to ask help.

LESSON XXXII.

231. 1. He was absent; I shall be absent. 2. He is able; to have been able; you will have been able. 3. He has been able; we should be able. 4. I have been in charge of; we were in charge of; you would have been in charge of. 5. Let them be present; we are present; they will be present. 6. Let us give; we should give; give ye. 7. An ample supply of grain was at hand in these winter quarters. 8. All hope of safety will be far distant. 9. You are in charge of a few men who have been left behind. 10. Why has his confidence failed? 11. You will scarcely be able to see the mountains.

LESSON XXXIII.

232. 1. He endures; we shall endure; they endured. 2. You will have endured; he was enduring; they endure. 3. May you bring; he has brought. 4. To have brought; about to bring; of bringing. 5. It will be borne; let them be borne; they would have been borne. 6. They have been brought back; you will have been brought back; we had been brought back. 7. So many calamities can scarcely be endured. 8. A report of the uprising was straightway brought to Caesar. 9. In the meanwhile Caesar received the deserters who had betaken themselves to him. 10. You bravely endure all the dangers of this journey.

LESSON XXXIV.

233. 1. Thou art willing; we were willing; they were willing. 2. He will be willing; he is willing; they have been willing. 3. We were unwilling; I shall be unwilling. 4. To have been unwilling; you are unwilling; he had been unwilling. 5. Let him prefer; we should have preferred; to prefer. 6. I preferred; we prefer; we shall prefer. 7. He is unwilling to become the slave of any[1] man. 8. Frequent disagreements occur among the maritime tribes. 9. You are unwilling to attack on account of your fear of danger. 10. Caesar will be informed of the recent revolt of the Sequani.

LESSON XXXV.

234. 1. You will perish; he has perished; we perish. 2. They were approaching; he will have approached; I had approached. 3. Let them cross; he has crossed; I shall cross. 4. Remember ye; he will remember; to remember. 5. They hate; you will hate; he was hating. 6. Let us return; we shall return; he has returned. 7. They have been surrounded; he will be surrounded; you will be surrounded. 8. They were approaching the fords of the Rhone. 9. I was not able to remember the beginning of this affair. 10. You hate all good (men). 11. They have secretly begun to form another plan.

---

[1] Use *ūllus, a, um.*

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES.

The Woman and the Hen.

235. Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cottīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī[1] coepit,[2] illam aurī māssam intus cēlāre,[3] et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī[4] solet. Itaque dum mājōribus[5] dīvitiīs[6] inhiat,[7] etiam minōrēs[8] perdidit.

The Oxen.

236. In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs[9] bovēs in māximā concordiā, et sīc ab omnī ferārum incursiōne[10] tūtī erant. Sed dissidiō[11] inter illōs ortō, singulī ā ferīs[12] petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet, quantum bonī[13] sit[14] in concordiā.

The footnotes refer to the sections of the author's *Latin Grammar*.

[1] 328.	[5] 72.	[9] 80, 3.	[12] 216.
[2] 133.	[6] 187, III.	[10] 214.	[13] 201, 2.
[3] 314.	[7] 293, I.	[11] 227.	[14] 300.
[4] 328.	[8] 72.		

The Dog in the Manger.

237. Canis jacēbat in praesaepī bovēsque lātrandō[1] ā pābulō[2] arcēbat. Cuī ūnus boum,[3] "*Quanta ista,*" inquit, "*invidia est, quod nōn pateris ut eō cibō*[4] *vescā-mur,*[5] *quem tū ipse capere nec velīs nec possīs!*"

Haec fābula invidiae[6] indolem dēclārat.

The Travellers and the Ass.

238. Duo quī ūnā iter faciēbant, asinum oberrantem in sōlitūdine cōnspicātī,[7] accurrunt laetī,[8] et uterque eum sibi vindicāre[9] coepit, quod eum prior[10] cōnspexisset.[11] Dum vērō contendunt[12] et rīxantur, nec ā verberibus[13] abstinent, asinus aufūgit et neuter eō[14] potītur.

The Kid and the Wolf.

239. Haedus, stāns in tēctō domūs, lupō[15] praetereuntī[16] maledīxit. Cui lupus, "*Nōn tū,*" inquit, "*sed tēctum mihi maledīcit.*"

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs[17] timidōs audācēs[18] reddit.

The Peasant and the Mouse.

240. Mūs ā rūsticō[19] dēprehēnsus tam ācrī morsū[20] ējus digitōs vulnerāvit, ut ille eum dīmitteret,[21] dīcēns:

---

[1] 338, 4, *a.*
[2] 214.
[3] 201.
[4] 218, 1.
[5] 295, 2.
[6] 198.
[7] 112.
[8] 239.
[9] 328.
[10] 241, 2.
[11] 286.
[12] 293, I.
[13] 214.
[14] 218, 1.
[15] 187, II, *a.*
[16] 132.
[17] 177.
[18] 177, 2.
[19] 216.
[20] 218.
[21] 284, 1.

"*Nihil, mehercule, tam pusillum est, quod dē salūte dēspērāre dēbeat,*[1] *modo sē dēfendere velit.*"

The Wolf and the Crane.

241. In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Mercēde[2] igitur condūcit gruem, quī illud extrahat.[3] Hōc grūs longitūdine[4] collī facile effēcit. Cum autem mercēdem postulāret,[5] subrīdēns lupus et dentibus[6] īnfrendēns, "*Num tibi,*" inquit, "*parva mercēs vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupī faucibus extrāxistī?*"

The Trumpeter.

242. Tubicen ab hostibus captus,[7] "*Nōlīte*[8] *mē,*" inquit, "*interficere; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeō praeter hanc tubam.*" At hostēs, "*Propter hōc ipsum,*" inquiunt, "*te interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pūgnandī*[9] *sīs*[10] *imperītus, aliōs ad pūgnam incitāre*[11] *solēs.*"[12]

Fābula docet, nōn sōlum maleficōs esse pūniendōs[13] sed etiam eōs, quī aliōs ad male faciendum[14] irrītent.[15]

The Farmer and his Sons.

243. Agricola senex, cum mortem sibi[16] appropinquāre[17] sentīret,[18] fīliōs convocāvit, quōs,[19] ut fierī[20]

---

[1] 284, 2.
[2] 225.
[3] 282, 2.
[4] 218.
[5] 288, B.
[6] 218.
[7] 337, 2.
[8] 276, c.
[9] 338, 1; 204.
[10] 309, 3.
[11] 328.
[12] 286.
[13] 314.
[14] 338, 3.
[15] 314.
[16] 187, III.
[17] 314.
[18] 288, B.
[19] 314.
[20] 131.

solet, interdum discordāre[1] nōverat, et fascem virgulārum afferrī[2] jubet. Quibus[3] allātīs, fīliōs hortātur, ut hunc fascem frangerent.[4] Quod cum facere nōn possent,[5] distribuit singulās virgās, eīsque[6] celeriter frāctīs, docuit illōs, quam fīrma rēs[7] esset[8] concordia, quamque imbēcillis discordia.

The Mice.

244. Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōnsilium, quō modō ā fēle cavērent.[9] Multīs aliīs[10] prōpositīs, omnibus[11] placuit[12] ut eī[13] tintinnābulum annecterētur;[14] sīc enim ipsōs sonitū[15] admonitōs eam fugere[16] posse.[17] Sed cum jam inter mūrēs quaererētur,[18] quī fēlī[19] tintinnābulum annecteret,[20] nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō plūrimōs esse[21] audācēs,[22] sed in ipsō perīculō timidōs.

The Tortoise and the Eagle.

245. Testūdō aquilam māgnopere ōrābat, ut sēsē volāre docēret.[23] Aquila eī ostendēbat quidem, eam rem petere[24] nātūrae[25] suae contrāriam; sed illa nihilō[26] minus īnstābat, et obsecrābat aquilam, ut sē[27] volucrem[28] facere[29] vellet.[30] Itaque ungulīs[31] arreptam

---

1 314.
2 331, II.
3 227.
4 295, 1.
5 288, B.
6 227.
7 168.
8 300, 1.
9 300, 2.
10 227.
11 187, II, *a*.
12 138.
13 187, III.
14 295, 4.
15 218.
16 328.
17 314.
18 288, B.
19 187, III.
20 300, 1.
21 314.
22 233, 2; 231.
23 295, 1.
24 314.
25 192, 1.
26 223.
27 177; 244, II.
28 177, 2.
29 328.
30 295, 1.
31 218.

aquila sustulit in sublīme, et dēmīsit illam, ut per āërem ferrētur.[1] Tum in saxa incidēns comminūta interiit.

Haec fābula docet, multōs cupiditātibus[2] suīs occaecātōs cōnsilia prūdentiōrum respuere,[3] et in exitium ruere stultitiā[4] suā.[5]

The Lion.

246. Societātem jūnxerant lēo, juvenca, capra, ovis. Praedā[6] autem, quam cēperant, in quattuor partēs aequālēs dīvīsā, leō, "*Prīma,*" āit, "*mea est; dēbētur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et secundam, quam merētur rōbur meum. Tertiam vindicat sibi ēgregius labor meus. Quārtam quī sibi arrogāre voluerit, is sciat,*[7] *sē habitūrum mē inimīcum sibi.*"[8] Quid facerent[9] imbēcillēs bēstiae, aut quae sibi leōnem īnfēstum habēre[10] vellet?[11]

II. ROMAN HISTORY.

1. *The Regal Period,* 753–510 B.C.

Saturn.

247. Antīquissimīs temporibus[12] Sāturnus in Italiam vēnisse dīcitur. Ibi haud procul ā Jāniculō arcem

---

[1] 282. [2] 218. [3] 314. [4] 219. [5] 243, 1, *a*. [6] 227. [7] 275. [8] 192, 1. [9] 277. [10] 328. [11] 277. [12] 230.

condidit, eamque[1] Sāturniam[2] appellāvit. Hīc Italōs[3] prīmus[4] agricultūram[5] docuit.

Latinus and Aeneas.

248. Posteā Latīnus in illīs regiōnibus imperāvit. Sub hōc rēge Trōja in Asiā ēversa est. Hinc Aenēās, Anchīsae fīlius, cum multīs Trōjānīs, quibus[6] ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, aufūgit et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rēx eī benīgnē receptō fīliam Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam[7] in honōrem conjugis Lāvīnium[8] appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

249. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, rēgnum accēpit. Hīc sēdem rēgnī in alium locum trānstulit, urbemque condidit in monte Albānō, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, quī post Aenēae mortem Lāvīniā[9] nātus erat. Ejus posterī omnēs ūsque ad Rōmam conditam Albae[10] rēgnāvērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

250. Ūnus hōrum rēgum,[11] Rōmulus Silvius, sē Jove[12] mājōrem[13] esse[14] dīcēbat, et, cum tonāret,[15]

---

[1] 177.
[2] 177.
[3] 178, 1, *b*.
[4] 241, 2.
[5] 178, 1, *b*.
[6] 187, II, *a*.
[7] 177.
[8] 177.
[9] 215.
[10] 232, 1.
[11] 201.
[12] 217.
[13] 233, 2.
[14] 314.
[15] 288, B.

mīlitibus[1] imperāvit, ut clipeōs hastīs[2] percuterent,[3] dīcēbatque hunc sonum multō[4] clāriōrem[5] esse[6] quam tonitrum. Fulmine[7] ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

Silvius Procās, rēx Albānōrum, duōs fīliōs relīquit Numitōrem et Amūlium. Hōrum minor nātū,[8] Amūlius, frātrī optiōnem dedit utrum rēgnum habēre[9] vellet,[10] an bona, quae pater relīquisset.[11] Numitor paterna bona praetulit; Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

251. Amūlius, ut rēgnum fīrmissimē possidēret,[12] Numitōris fīlium per īnsidiās interēmit et fīliam frātris Rheam Silviam[13] Vestālem virginem[14] fēcit. Nam hīs Vestae sacerdōtibus[15] non licet virō[16] nūbere.[17] Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs fīliōs, Rōmulum et Remum, peperit. Hōc cum Amūlius comperisset,[18] mātrem in vincula conjēcit, puerōs[19] autem in Tiberim[20] abicī[21] jussit.

252. Forte Tiberis aqua ultrā rīpam sē effūderat, et, cum puerī in vadō essent positī,[22] aqua refluēns eōs in siccō relīquit. Ad eōrum vāgītum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus[23] suīs aluit. Quod vidēns Faustulus quīdam, pāstor illīus regiōnis, puerōs sustulit, et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae nūtriendōs dedit.

---

[1] 187, II, *a*.
[2] 218.
[3] 295, 1.
[4] 223.
[5] 233, 2; 234.
[6] 314.
[7] 218.
[8] 226.
[9] 328.
[10] 300, 1.
[11] 314.
[12] 282.
[13] 177.
[14] 177.
[15] 187, II, *a*.
[16] 187, II.
[17] 327.
[18] 288, B.
[19] 331, II.
[20] 38, 1.
[21] 331, II.
[22] 286, 2.
[23] 218.

Foundation of Rome, 753 B.C.

253. Sīc Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent,[1] et forte comperissent, quis ipsōrum avus, quae māter fuisset,[2] Amūlium interfēcērunt, et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīnō, quam[3] Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam[4] vocāvit. Haec cum moenibus[5] circumdarētur,[6] Remus occīsus est, dum frātrem irrīdēns moenia trānsilit.[7]

Seizure of the Sabine Women.

254. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret,[8] asȳlum patefēcit, ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suīs pulsī accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus conjugēs deerant. Itaque fēstum Neptūnī et lūdōs īnstituit. Ad hōs cum multī ex fīnitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et līberīs vēnissent,[9] Rōmānī inter ipsōs lūdōs spectantēs virginēs rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines.

255. Populī illī quōrum[10] virginēs raptae erant bellum adversus raptōrēs suscēpērunt. Cum Rōmae appropinquārent,[11] forte in Tarpēiam virginem incidērunt quae in arce sacra[12] prōcūrābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem mōnstrāret,[13] eīque permīsērunt, ut mūnus sibi posceret.[14] Illa petiit, ut sibi darent,[15] quod

---

[1] 288, B.
[2] 300, 1.
[3] 177.
[4] 177.
[5] 218.
[6] 288, B.
[7] 293, I.
[8] 282.
[9] 288, B.
[10] 198.
[11] 288, B.
[12] 236, 1.
[13] 295, 1.
[14] 295, 2.
[15] 295, 1.

in sinistrīs manibus gererent, ānulōs aureōs et armillās sīgnificāns. At hostēs in arcem ab eā perductī scūtīs[1] Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

256. Tum Rōmulus cum hoste, quī montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pūgnam cōnseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est. In mediā[2] caede raptae prōcessērunt, et hinc patrēs hinc conjugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, et rogābant, ut caedis fīnem facerent.[3] Utrīque hīs precibus[4] commōtī sunt. Rōmulus foedus īcit et Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus.—His Death.

257. Posteā cīvitātem discrīpsit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit eōsque[5] cum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam eīs dēbitam patrēs[6] appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit, eāsque raptārum nōminibus[7] nuncupāvit. Annō[8] rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō, cum exercitum lūstrāret,[9] inter tempestātem ortam repente oculīs hominum subductus est. Hinc aliī[10] eum ā senātōribus interfectum,[11] aliī[10] ad deōs sublātum esse[11] exīstimāvērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius.

258. Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Quō[12] ēlāpsō, Numa Pompilius, Curibus,[13] urbe

---

[1] 218. [2] 241, 1. [3] 295, 1. [4] 218. [5] 177. [6] 177. [7] 218. [8] 230. [9] 288, B. [10] 253, 1. [11] 314. [12] 227. [13] 228, 1, *a*.

in agrō Sabīnōrum nātus, rēx[1] creātus est. Hīc vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen cīvitātī[2] prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra[3] plūrima īnstituit, ut populī barbarī et bellicōsī mōrēs mollīret.[4] Omnia[5] autem, quae faciēbat, sē nymphae Ēgeriae, conjugis suae, monitū[6] facere[7] dīcēbat. Morbō[8] dēcessit quadrāgēsimō tertiō imperiī annō.[9]

Tullus Hostilius.

259. Numae[10] successit Tullus Hostīlius, cūjus avus sē[11] in bellō adversus Sabīnōs fortem et strēnuum virum[12] praestiterat. Rēx[13] creātus bellum Albānīs[14] indīxit, idque trigeminōrum, Horātiōrum et Cūriātiōrum, certāmine[15] fīnīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Mettiī Fufetiī dīruit. Cum trīgintā duo annōs[16] rēgnāsset,[17] fulmine[18] ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

Ancus Marcius.

260. Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex fīliā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Hīc vir aequitāte[19] et religiōne avō[20] similis, Latīnōs bellō[21] domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova eī[22] moenia circumdedit. Carcerem prīmus[23] aedificāvit. Ad Tiberis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vīcēsimō quārtō annō[24] imperiī morbō[25] obiit.

---

[1] 177, 3. [2] 187, II, *a*. [3] 236, 1. [4] 282. [5] 236, 1. [6] 219. [7] 314. [8] 219. [9] 230. [10] 187, III. [11] 177. [12] 177. [13] 177, 3. [14] 187, III. [15] 218. [16] 181. [17] 288, B. [18] 218. [19] 226. [20] 192, 1. [21] 218. [22] 187, III. [23] 241, 2. [24] 230. [25] 219.

Lucius Tarquinius Priscus.

261. Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit, Dēmarātī fīlius, quī tyrannōs patriae Corinthī fugiēns in Etrūriam vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, quī nōmen ab urbe Tarquiniīs accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam[1] vēnerat.

262. Cum Rōmae[2] commorārētur,[3] Ancī rēgis familiāritātem cōnsecūtus est, quī eum[4] fīliōrum suōrum tūtōrem[5] relīquit. Sed is pūpillīs[6] rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit, quī minōrum gentium sunt appellātī. Plūra bella fēlīciter gessit, nec paucōs agrōs, hostibus adēmptōs, urbis territōriō[7] adjūnxit. Prīmus[8] triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Cloācās fēcit: Capitōlium incohāvit. Trīcēsimō octāvō imperiī annō[9] per Ancī fīliōs, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occīsus est.

Servius Tullius.

263. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genitus ex nōbilī fēminā, captīvā tamen et famulā. Cum adolēvisset,[10] rēx eī fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit.

264. Cum Prīscus Tarquinius occīsus esset,[11] Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum allocūta est, dīcēns: *rēgem*[12] *grave quidem, sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse;*[12] *eum petere, ut populus, dum convaluisset,*[13]

---

[1] 182. [2] 232. [3] 288, B. [4] 177. [5] 177. [6] 188, 2, *d.* [7] 187, III. [8] 241, 2. [9] 230. [10] 288, B. [11] 288, B. [12] 314. [13] 293, III, 2; 314.

Serviō Tulliō[1] *oboedrīet.*[2] Sīc Servius rēgnāre coepit, et bene imperium administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbī adjūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsum ōrdināvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium cum hīs quī in agrīs erant.

265. Hīc rēx interfectus est scelere[3] fīliae Tulliae et Tarquiniī Superbī, fīliī ējus rēgis, cui[4] Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō[5] interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prīma[6] conjugem[7] rēgem[8] salūtāvit. Cum domum[9] redīret,[10] aurīgam super patris corpus, in viā jacēns, carpentum agere[11] jussit.

Tarquinius Superbus.

266. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus[12] meruit. Bellō[13] tamen strēnuus plūrēs fīnitimōrum populōrum[14] vīcit. Templum Jovis in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā, dum Ardeam oppūgnat,[15] urbem Latiī, imperium perdidit. Nam cum fīlius ējus Lucrētiae, nōbilissimae fēminae, conjugī[16] Tarquiniī Collātīnī, vim fēcisset,[17] haec sē ipsa occīdit in cōnspectū marītī, patris, amīcōrumque, postquam eōs obtestāta est[18] ut hanc injūriam ulcīscerentur.[19]

267. Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque nōnnūllī in exitium rēgis conjūrārunt, populōque[20]

---

[1] 187, II, *a.*
[2] 295, 1.
[3] 218.
[4] 187, III.
[5] 216.
[6] 241, 2.
[7] 177.
[8] 177.
[9] 182, 1, *b.*
[10] 288, B.
[11] 331, II.
[12] 219.
[13] 226.
[14] 201.
[15] 293, I.
[16] 187, I.
[17] 288, B.
[18] 287, 1.
[19] 295, 1.
[20] 187, II, *a.*

persuāsērunt, ut eī portās urbis clauderet.[1] Exercitus quoque, quī cīvitātem Ardeam cum rēge oppūgnābat, eum relīquit. Itaque fūgit cum uxōre et līberīs suīs. Ita Rōmae septem rēgēs rēgnāvērunt annōs[2] ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

2. *The Early Republic*, 510–241 B.C.

Institution of the Republic, 510 B.C.

268. Hinc cōnsulēs coepēre[3] prō ūnō rēge duo creārī,[4] ut sī ūnus malus esset, alter eum coërcēret.[5] Annuum eīs imperium tribūtum est, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īnsolentiōrēs redderentur.[6] Fuērunt igitur annō[7] prīmō, expulsīs rēgibus,[8] cōnsulēs L. Jūnius Brūtus, ācerrimus lībertātis vindex, et Tarquinius Collātīnus marītus Lucrētiae, sed Collātīnō[9] paulō[10] post dignitās adēmpta est. Placuerat enim, nē quis ex Tarquiniōrum familiā Rōmae manēret.[11] Ergō cum omnī patrimōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit, et in ējus locum Valerius Pūblicola cōnsul[12] factus est.

Death of Brutus.

269. Commōvit bellum urbī rēx Tarquinius. In prīmā pūgnā Brūtus cōnsul, et Arrūns, Tarquiniī fīlius, inter sēsē[13] occīdērunt. Rōmānī tamen ex eā pūgnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum Rōmānae mātrōnae,

---

[1] 295, 1.
[2] 181.
[3] 133.
[4] 328.
[5] 282.
[6] 282.
[7] 230.
[8] 227.
[9] 188, 2, *d*.
[10] 223.
[11] 295, 4.
[12] 177, 3.
[13] 245.

quasi commūnem patrem, per annum lūxērunt. Valerius Pūblicola Spurium Lucrētium,[1] collēgam[2] sibi fēcit; cum morbō exstīnctus esset,[3] Pūblicola Horātium Pulvīllum sibi collēgam sūmpsit. Itaque prīmus annus quīnque cōnsulēs habuit.

War with Porsena, 508 B.C.

270. Secundō quoque annō[4] iterum Tarquinius bellum Rōmānīs[5] intulit, Porsenā,[6] rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium eī ferente. In illō bellō Horātius Cocles sōlus pontem līgneum dēfendit et hostēs cohibuit, dum pōns ā tergō ruptus esset.[7] Tum sē cum armīs in Tiberim conjēcit, et ad suōs[8] trānsnāvit.

271. Dum Porsena urbem obsidet,[9] Quīntus Mūcius Scaevola, juvenis fortis animī,[10] in castra hostium sē contulit eō cōnsiliō, ut rēgem occīderet.[11] At ibi scrībam rēgis prō ipsō rēge interfēcit. Tum ā rēgiīs satellitibus[12] comprehēnsus et ad rēgem dēductus, cum Porsena eum īgnibus[13] allātīs terrēret,[14] dextram ārae[15] accēnsae imposuit, dum flammīs cōnsūmpta esset.[16] Hōc facinus rēx mīrātus, juvenem dīmīsit incolumem. Tum hīc, quasi beneficium referēns, āit, *trecentōs aliōs juvenēs*[17] *in eum conjūrāsse.*[17] Hāc rē[18] territus Porsena pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit, Tarquinius autem Tusculum[19] sē contulit, ibique prīvātus cum uxōre cōnsenuit.

---

[1] 177.
[2] 177.
[3] 288, B.
[4] 230.
[5] 187, III.
[6] 227.
[7] 293, III, 2.
[8] 236, 1.
[9] 293, I.
[10] 203, 1.
[11] 282.
[12] 216.
[13] 227.
[14] 288, B.
[15] 187, III.
[16] 293, III, 2.
[17] 314.
[18] 218.
[19] 182.

Secession of the Plebs, 494 B.C.

272. Sextō decimō annō[1] post rēgēs exāctōs, populus Rōmae[2] sēditiōnem fēcit, questus quod tribūtīs[3] et mīlitiā ā senātū exhaurīrētur.[4] Māgna pars plēbis urbem relīquit, et in montem trāns Aniēnem amnem sēcessit. Tum patrēs turbātī Menēnium Agrippam mīsērunt ad plēbem quī eam senātuī conciliāret.[5] Hīc eīs inter alia[6] fābulam nārāvit dē ventre et membrīs hūmānī corporis; quā[7] populus commōtus est, ut in urbem redīret.[8] Tum prīmum tribūnī plēbis creātī sunt, quī plēbem adversum nōbilitātis superbiam dēfenderent.[9]

Treason of Coriolanus, 492 B.C.

273. Octāvō decimō annō[10] post exāctōs rēgēs, Q. Mārcius, Coriolānus[11] dictus ab urbe Volscōrum Coriolīs, quam bellō cēperat, plēbī[12] invīsus fierī coepit. Quārē urbe[13] expulsus ad Volscōs, ācerrimōs Rōmānōrum hostēs, contendit, et ab eīs[14] dux[15] exercitūs factus Rōmānōs saepe vīcit. Jam ūsque ad quīntum mīlliārium urbis accesserat, nec ūllīs cīvium suōrum lēgātiōnibus flectī poterat, ut patriae parceret.[16] Dēnique Veturia māter et Volumnia uxor ex urbe ad eum vēnērunt; quārum flētū[17] et precibus commōtus est, ut exercitum removēret.[18] Quō[19] factō ā[20] Volscīs ut prōditor occīsus esse dīcitur.

---

[1] 230.	[5] 282, 2.	[9] 282, 2.	[13] 214.	[17] 218.
[2] 232.	[6] 236, 1.	[10] 230.	[14] 216.	[18] 295, 1.
[3] 218.	[7] 218.	[11] 177, 3.	[15] 177, 3.	[19] 227.
[4] 286, 1.	[8] 295, 1.	[12] 192, 1.	[16] 295, 1.	[20] 216.

Battle of the Cremera, 477 B.C.

274. Cum Rōmānī adversum Vējentēs bellum gererent,[1] familia Fabiōrum sōla hōc bellum suscēpit. Profectī sunt trecentī sex nōbilissimī hominēs, duce[2] Fabiō cōnsule. Cum saepe hostēs vīcissent, apud Cremeram fluvium castra posuērunt. Ibi, cum Vējentēs dolō[3] ūsī eōs in īnsidiās pellexissent, in proeliō exortō omnēs periērunt. Ūnus superfuit ex tantā familiā, quī propter aetātem puerīlem dūcī nōn potuerat ad pūgnam. Hīc genus prōpāgāvit ad Quīntum Fabium Māximum, illum quī Hannibalem prūdentī cunctātiōne dēbilitāvit.

The Decemvirs.

275. Annō trecentēsimō et alterō ab urbe conditā decemvirī creātī sunt, quī cīvitātī lēgēs scrīberent.[4] Hī prīmō annō bene ēgērunt; secundō autem dominātiōnem exercēre[5] coepērunt. Sed cum ūnus eōrum, Appius Claudius, virginem ingenuam, Virginiam, Virginiī centuriōnis fīliam, corrumpere vellet, pater eam occīdit. Tum ad mīlitēs profūgit eōsque ad sēditiōnem commōvit. Adēmpta est decemvirīs[6] potestās, ipsīque omnēs aut morte[7] aut exsiliō pūnītī sunt.

The Siege of Veii.

276. In bellō contrā Vējentānōs Fūrius Camillus urbem Faleriōs obsidēbat. In quā obsidiōne cum lūdī

---

[1] 288, B. [2] 227. [3] 218, 1. [4] 282, 2. [5] 328. [6] 188, 2, *d* [7] 218.

litterāriī magister prīncipum fīliōs ex urbe in castra hostium dūxisset, Camillus hōc dōnum nōn accēpit, sed scelestum hominem, manibus[1] post tergum vinctīs, puerīs Faleriōs redūcendum trādidit; virgāsque eīs dedit, quibus prōditōrem in urbem agerent.[2] Hāc tantā animī nōbilitāte commōtī Faliscī urbem Rōmānīs trādidērunt. Camillō autem apud Rōmānōs crīminī[3] datum est, quod albīs equīs triumphāsset[4] et praedam inaequē dīvīsisset; damnātus ob eam causam et cīvitāte[5] expulsus est.

Rome captured by the Gauls, 390 B.C.

277. Paulō[6] post Gallī Senonēs ad urbem vēnērunt, Rōmānōs ad flūmen Alliam vīcērunt, et urbem etiam occupārunt. Jam nihil praeter Capitōlium dēfendī potuit. Et jam praesidium famē[7] labōrābat, et in eō erant, ut pācem ā Gallīs aurō[8] emerent,[9] cum Camillus cum manū mīlitum superveniēns hostēs māgnō proeliō[10] superāvit.

Achievement of Titus Manlius Torquatus, 361 B.C.

278. Annō trecentēsimō nōnāgēsimō tertiō post urbem conditam Gallī iterum ad urbem accesserant, et quārtō mīlliāriō trāns Aniēnem fluvium cōnsēderant. Contrā eōs missus est Titus Quīnctius. Ibi Gallus quīdam eximiā corporis māgnitūdine[11] fortissimum

---

[1] 227. [2] 282, 2. [3] 191, 1. [4] 286, 1. [5] 214. [6] 223. [7] 59, 2, *b*; 219. [8] 225. [9] 297. [10] 218. [11] 224.

Rōmānōrum ad certāmen singulāre prōvocāvit. Titus Mānlius, nōbilissimus juvenis, prōvocātiōnem accēpit, Gallum occīdit, eumque torque[1] aureō spoliāvit, quō ōrnātus erat. Hinc et ipse et posterī ējus Torquāti[2] appellātī sunt. Gallī fugam capessīvērunt.

Marcus Valerius Corvinus, 348 B.C.

279. Novō bellō[3] cum Gallīs exortō, annō urbis quadringentēsimō sextō, iterum Gallus prōcessit rōbore atque armīs īnsīgnis, et prōvocāvit ūnum ex Rōmānīs ut sēcum armīs dēcerneret.[4] Tum sē M. Valerius, tribūnus mīlitum, obtulit; et, cum prōcessisset armātus, corvus eī[5] suprā dextrum bracchium sēdit. Mox, commissā pūgnā,[6] hīc corvus ālīs[7] et unguibus Gallī oculōs verberāvit. Ita factum est ut Gallus nūllō negōtiō ā Valeriō interficerētur,[8] quī hinc Corvīnī nōmen accēpit.

War with the Samnites, 323 B.C.

280. Posteā Rōmānī bellum gessērunt cum Samnītibus, ad quod L. Papīrius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris profectus est. Quī cum negōtiī cūjusdam causā Rōmam[9] rediisset, praecēpit Q. Fabiō Rulliānō,[10] magistrō equitum, quem apud exercitum relīquit, nē pūgnam cum hoste committeret.[11] Sed ille, occāsiōnem nactus, fēlīcissimē dīmicāvit, et Samnītēs dēlēvit. Ob hanc rem ā dictātōre capitis[12] damnātus est. At ille

---

[1] 214.
[2] 177, 3.
[3] 227.
[4] 295, 1.
[5] 188.
[6] 227.
[7] 218.
[8] 297, 2.
[9] 182.
[10] 187, II, *a*.
[11] 295, 1.
[12] 208, 2, *a*.

in urbem cōnfūgit, et ingentī favōre[1] mīlitum et populī līberātus est; in Papīrium autem tanta exorta est sēditiō, ut paene ipse interficerētur.[2]

Battle of the Caudine Forks, 321 B.C.

281. Duōbus annīs[3] post T. Veturius et Spurius Postumius cōnsulēs bellum adversum Samnītēs gerēbant. Hī ā Pontiō Telesīnō,[4] duce hostium, in īnsidiās inductī sunt. Nam ad Furculās Caudīnās Rōmānōs pellexit in angustiās unde sēsē expedīre nōn poterant. Ibi Pontius patrem suum Herennium rogāvit, quid faciendum putāret.[5] Ille respondit, *aut omnēs occīdendōs esse,*[6] *ut Rōmānōrum vīrēs frangerentur,*[7] *aut omnēs dīmittendōs, ut beneficiō obligārentur.* Pontius utrumque cōnsilium improbāvit, omnēsque sub jugum mīsit. Samnītēs dēnique post bellum ūndēquīnquāgintā annōrum superātī sunt.

War with Pyrrhus, 281 B.C.

282. Dēvictīs Samnītibus,[8] Tarentīnīs[9] bellum indictum est, quia lēgātīs Rōmānōrum injūriam fēcissent.[10] Hī Pyrrhum,[11] Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium[12] poposcērunt. Is mox in Italiam vēnit, tumque prīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste pūgnāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul Pūblius Valerius Laevīnus. Hīc, cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī

---

[1] 219.
[2] 284, 1.
[3] 223.
[4] 216.
[5] 300, 1.
[6] 314.
[7] 282.
[8] 227.
[9] 187, III.
[10] 286, 1.
[11] 178, 1, *a.*
[12] 178, 1, *a.*

cēpisset, jussit eōs per castra dūcī, tumque dīmittī, ut renūntiārent[1] Pyrrhō, quaecumque ā Rōmānīs[2] agerentur.

283. Pūgnā[3] commissā, Pyrrhus auxiliō[4] elephantōrum vīcit. Nox proeliō fīnem dedit. Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mīlle octingentōs cēpit, eōsque summō honōre[5] trāctāvit. Cum eōs, quī in proeliō interfectī erant, omnēs adversīs vulneribus[6] et trucī vultū[6] etiam mortuōs jacēre[7] vidēret, tulisse ad caelum manūs dīcitur cum hāc vōce: "*Ego cum tālibus virīs brevī*[8] *orbem terrārum subigam.*"

284. Posteā Pyrrhus Rōmam[9] perrēxit; omnia ferrō īgnīque vāstāvit; Campāniam dēpopulātus est, atque ad Praeneste vēnit, mīlliāriō ab urbe octāvō dēcimō. Mox terrōre[10] exercitūs, quī cum cōnsule[11] sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē captīvīs redimendīs[12] missī honōrificē ab eō[13] susceptī sunt; captīvōs sine pretiō reddidit. Ūnum ex lēgātīs, Fabricium sīc admīrātus est, ut eī quārtam partem rēgnī suī prōmitteret,[14] sī ad sē trānsīret,[15] sed ā Fabriciō contemptus est.

285. Cum jam Pyrrhus ingentī Rōmānōrum admīrātiōne[16] tenērētur, lēgātum mīsit Cīneam, praestantissimum virum quī pācem peteret[17] eā condiciōne, ut

---

[1] 282. [2] 216. [3] 227. [4] 218. [5] 220. [6] 224. [7] 314. [8] 231. [9] 182. [10] 219. [11] 222. [12] 339, 1. [13] 216. [14] 284, 1. [15] 314; 319, B. [16] 218. [17] 282, 2.

Pyrrhus eam partem Italiae quam armīs[1] occupāverat obtinēret. Rōmānī respondērunt, *eum cum Rōmānīs pācem habēre nōn posse,*[2] *nisi ex Italiā recessisset.*[3] Cīneās cum rediisset, Pyrrhō eum interrogantī, quālis ipsī Rōma vīsa esset,[4] respondit, sē rēgum patriam vīdisse.

Integrity of Fabricius.

286. In alterō proeliō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfectī, vīgintī mīlia hostium caesa sunt. Pyrrhus Tarentum[5] fūgit. Interjectō annō, Fabricius contrā eum missus est. Ad hunc medicus Pyrrhī nocte[6] vēnit prōmittēns, sē Pyrrhum venēnō occīsūrum sī mūnus sibi darētur.[7] Hunc Fabricius vinctum redūcī[8] jussit ad dominum. Tunc rēx admīrātus illum dīxisse fertur: "*Ille est Fabricius, quī difficilius ab honestāte quam sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest.*" Paulō post Pyrrhus tertiō etiam proeliō fūsus ā Tarentō recessit, et, cum in Graeciam rediisset, ad Argōs, Peloponnēsī urbem, interfectus est.

First Punic War, 264 B.C.

287. Annō quadringentēsimō nōnāgēsimō post urbem conditam Rōmānōrum exercitūs prīmum in Siciliam trājēcērunt, rēgemque Syrācūsārum Hierōnem, Poenōsque, quī multās cīvitātēs in eā īnsulā occupāverant, superāvērunt. Quīntō annō hūjus bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī, Gāiō

---

[1] 218. [2] 314. [3] 314; 319, B, *a*. [4] 300, 1. [5] 182. [6] 230. [7] 314; 319, B, *a* [8] 331, II.

Duīliō, Gnaeō Cornēliō Asinā cōnsulibus,[1] marī dīmicāvērunt. Duīlius Carthāginiēnsēs vīcit, trīgintā nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim mersit, septem mīlia hostium[2] cēpit, tria mīlia occīdit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs[3] grātior fuit.

The Romans invade Africa, 256 B.C.

288. Paucīs annīs interjectīs, bellum in Āfricam est trānslātum. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsium dux, pūgnā[4] nāvālī superātus est; nam, perditīs sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus, sē recēpit; Rōmānī vīgintī duās āmīsērunt. Cum in Āfricam vēnissent, Poenōs in plūribus proeliīs vīcērunt, māgnam vim hominum cēpērunt, septuāgintā quattuor cīvitātēs in fidem accēpērunt. Tum victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs[5] petiērunt. Quam cum Mārcus Atīlius Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, dare nōllet nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus, Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium petiērunt ā Lacedaemoniīs. Hī Xanthippum mīsērunt, quī Rōmānum exercitum māgnō proeliō vīcit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula conjectus est.

Patriotism of Regulus, 250 B.C.

289. Nōn tamen ubīque fortūna Carthāginiēnsibus[6] fāvit. Cum aliquot proeliīs[7] victī essent, Rēgulum rogāvērunt, ut Rōmam proficīscerētur,[8] et pācem captivōrumque permūtātiōnem ā Rōmānīs obtinēret. Ille

---

[1] 227, 1. [2] 201. [3] 192, 1. [4] 218. [5] 178, 1, *a*, p. 126. [6] 187, II, *a*. [7] 218. [8] 295, 1.

cum Rōmam[1] vēnisset, inductus in senātum dīxit, *sē dēsiisse*[2] *Rōmānum esse ex illā diē, quā*[3] *in potestātem Poenōrum vēnisset.*[2] Tum Rōmānīs[4] suāsit, nē pācem cum Carthāginiēnsibus facerent:[5] illōs enim tot cāsibus frāctōs spem nūllam nisi in pāce habēre: *tantī nōn esse,*[6] *ut tot mīlia captīvōrum propter sē ūnum et paucōs, quī ex Rōmānīs captī essent,*[6] *redderentur.* Haec sententia obtinuit. Regressus igitur in Āfricam crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs exstīnctus est.

Close of the First Punic War, 241 B.C.

290. Tandem C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōnsulibus,[7] annō bellī Pūnicī vīcēsimō tertiō māgnum proelium nāvāle commissum est contrā Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae. In eō proeliō septuāgintā trēs Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae, centum vīgintī quīnque dēmersae, trīgintā duo mīlia hostium[8] capta, tredecim mīlia occīsa sunt. Statim Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petiērunt, eīsque pāx tribūta est. Captīvī Rōmānōrum, quī tenēbantur ā Carthāginiēnsibus, redditī sunt. Poenī Siciliā,[9] Sardiniā, et cēterīs īnsulīs, quae inter Italiam Āfricamque jacent, dēcessērunt, omnemque Hispāniam quae citrā Hibērum est, Rōmānīs permīsērunt.

---

[1] 182. [2] 314. [3] 230. [4] 187, II, *a*. [5] 295, 1. [6] 314. [7] 227, 1. [8] 201. [9] 214.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

235. eī: *for her.* **pariēbat**: notice the imperfect tense, which is regularly used to denote a customary or repeated action. **illam**: this is the subject of *cēlāre; māssam* is the object. **repperit**: from *reperiō.* **nisi quod**: *except what;* the antecedent of *quod* is *id* understood. **minōrēs**: *i.e. lesser riches;* understand *dīvitiās.*

236. pāscēbantur: *used to graze.* **dissidiō . . . ortō**: *when discord arose* or *since discord arose*, lit. *discord having arisen.* In rendering the ablative absolute, pains should be taken to translate it by an equivalent English idiom. **quantum bonī**: *how great advantage*, lit. *how much of good.*

237. Cui: indirect object of *inquit.* **boum**: gen. plu. of *bōs.* **ista**: *your*, lit. *that, that of yours.* **quod**: *in that;* the clause *quod pateris* is explanatory of *invidia.* **pateris**: from *patior.* **nec . . . nec**: *neither . . . nor.* **velīs, possīs**: these verbs are in the subjunctive by attraction. In Latin, a clause dependent upon a subjunctive is regularly attracted into the same mood; § 324.

238. Duo: *two men.* **ūnā**: the adv., *together.* **iter faciēbant**: *were travelling*, lit. *were making a journey.* **nec**: *and . . . not.*

239. praetereuntī: *who was passing by;* pres. participle of *praetereō.*

240. ille: *i.e.* the farmer. **eum**: the mouse. **quod dēspērāre dēbeat**: *that it ought to despair; quod* is the rela-

tive; clauses of result are sometimes introduced by relatives. **modo . . . velit**: *provided it wishes; modo* in this sense is regularly followed by the subjunctive.

241. quī . . . extrahat: *to pull it out.* **Hōc**: *i.e.* the removal of the bone. **parva mercēs**: this is the predicate nominative with *vidētur*, the subject of *vidētur* being the clause *quod . . . extrāxistī, that you took your head out unharmed.*

242. inquiunt: 3d plu. of *inquit;* its subject is *hostēs.* **hōc ipsum**: *this very thing.* **cum**: *though.*

243. Agricola senex: *an old farmer.* **mortem sibi appropinquāre**: *that death was approaching him*, lit. *death to approach himself.* **ut fierī solet**: *as is wont to happen.* **nōverat**: *knew;* the perfect of *nōscō* has the force of the present in the sense, *I know*, and the pluperfect similarly has the force of the imperfect. **ut frangerent**: *to break.* Observe that *frangerent* is in the imperfect, although *hortātur* is in the present. At first sight this seems to violate the principle for the sequence of tenses; but *hortātur* is what is called an Historical Present, *i.e.* it really refers to the past; and hence is treated as an historical tense. **Quod cum facere nōn possent**: *and when they could not do this*, lit. *when they could not do which;* it is very common in Latin to introduce a sentence by a relative, where in English we should employ a demonstrative or personal pronoun with a conj., — *and he, but he, and this, but this, etc.* **frāctīs**: *i.e.* by the sons. **quamque**: *and how; que* is the enclitic.

244. quō modō . . . cavērent: *as to how they should guard against the cat.* **multīs aliīs prōpositīs**: *when many other things had been proposed.* **posse**: this infinitive depends upon the idea of *thinking* involved in *placuit, etc.* **cum jam quaererētur**, *etc.: when it came to asking who would fasten*, lit. *when it was already asked, etc.; quī* is the interrogative; this form (instead of *quis*) often occurs in indirect questions.

245. sēsē: *it, i.e.* the tortoise. **eam, rem**: *eam* is subject of *petere; rem* is the object. **arreptam sustulit**: *snatched up and carried.*

246. Prīma: understand *pars*. **ăit**: third sing. of pres. ind. of *ājō*. **et**: *also*. **quī**: its antecedent is the following *is*. **inimīcum**: *as an enemy*. **Quid facerent**, *etc.*: *what were the beasts to do?* **quae**: *which one?*

247. Sāturnus: the god Saturn. **Jāniculō**: the Janiculum was a hill on the right bank of the Tiber, directly opposite the seven hills on which Rome was built.

248. Trōja: the famous city in northwestern Asia Minor. The mythical date of its overthrow is 1184 B.C. **Hinc**: *i.e.* from Troy. **pepercerat**: from *parcō*. **eī benīgnē receptō dedit**: *received him kindly and gave him*, lit. *gave to him having been kindly received*. **in mātrimōnium, in honōrem**: *in marriage, in honor;* the Latin says *into*.

249. monte Albānō: in Latium about twenty miles S.E. of Rome. **Alba Longa**: lit. *the long white (town)*; so called from the fact that its white buildings stretched for a long distance over the ridge of the hill. **genitus erat**: from *gignō*. **ūsque ad Rōmam conditam**: *up to the very founding of Rome*, lit. *even up to Rome founded*.

250. tonāret: impersonal. **minor nātū**: *the younger*, lit. *the lesser as to birth*. **praecipitātus est**: *fell headlong*. **relīquisset**: inasmuch as the preceding indirect question is indirect discourse, *relīquisset* is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse; hence the subjunctive.

251. Vestālem virginem: there were six Vestal virgins; their duty was to watch the fire which was kept constantly burning on the hearth of Vesta's temple. **ā Mārte**: *by* (lit. *from*) *Mars*. **peperit**: from *pariō*.

252. ultrā rīpam, *etc.*: *i.e. had overflowed its banks*, lit. *had poured itself beyond the bank*. *effūderat* is from *effundō*. **ēssent positī**: = *positī essent;* from *pōnō*. **in siccō**: *on dry land; siccō* is used substantively. **Quod**: *this*, lit. *which;* another illustration of the use of the relative pronoun, where in English we naturally employ the demonstrative. **sustulit**: from *tollō*. **nūtriendōs**: *to be cared for*.

253. trānsēgērunt: from *trānsigō*. **adolēvissent**: from *adolēscō*. **frātrem irrīdēns**: *in ridicule of his brother*, lit. *ridiculing*.

254. populīs: the pupil should bear in mind that this means *tribes*, not *people* in the ordinary English sense. **ipsōs**: *very*. **spectantēs**: *as they were looking on*.

255. raptōrēs: *those who had seized* (*the maidens*). **quod**: *what* (*that which*); as antecedent, understand *id*, object of *darent*. **et ea**: *those also*, *those too*; *et* is here an adverb.

256. Forum Rōmānum: the Forum was situated on level ground surrounded by six of the seven hills of Rome. **raptae**: *the* (*women who had been*) *seized*. **hinc . . . hinc**: *on the one side . . . on the other*.

257. discrīpsit: *i.e.* organized different political and social classes. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*, lit. *when . . . then* (*while . . . at the same time*). **ortam**: from *orior*. **oculīs**: *from the eyes*; *oculīs* is really dative; verbs of *taking away* at times take the dative in the sense of *from*. **alīī . . . alīī**: *some . . . others*.

258. interrēgnum: *interregnum*, *i.e.* a period between reigns. **Curibus**: this limits *nātus*. **quidem**: *to be sure*; observe that *quidem* always lays stress upon the word immediately preceding it (here *bellum*); frequently it is best to attempt no special translation of *quidem*, but to bring out its force in English by the arrangement of words or by oral emphasis. **gessit**: from *gerō*. **nec minus tamen prōfuit**: *and yet he was none the less of advantage*. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and*. **sē nymphae**, *etc.*: *he said he did at the advice of the nymph Egeria*, *his wife*.

259. praestiterat: from *praestō*. **rēgnāsset**: = *rēgnāvisset*; § 116, 1. **ārsit**: remember that *ārdeō* is intransitive.

260. nova eī moenia circumdedit: *surrounded it with new walls*, lit. *surrounded new walls to it*. **ad Tiberis ōstia**: Rome was some twenty miles from the mouth of the Tiber by the course of the river. **obiit**: *died*, lit. *met* (*death*).

262. pūpillīs: *from his wards.* **minōrum gentium**: understand *senātōrēs*, *i.e. senators of the lesser gentes* (*tribes*). **nec paucōs agrōs**: *and not a few lands.* **hostibus**: *from the enemy;* dative. **adēmptōs**: from *adimō*. **triumphāns**: *in a triumphal procession*, lit. *triumphing.* **Cloācās**: several of the ancient Roman sewers still exist and are in use to-day. **Capitōlium**: the magnificent temple on the summit of the Capitoline Hill. It was dedicated to Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva. **per Ancī fīliōs**: *i.e.* at their instigation; they hired assassins to perform the deed. **quibus**: *from whom;* dative.

264. grave quidem: *serious, to be sure.* **eum petere**: *that he requested.* **dum convaluisset**: *until he should recover.*

265. in agrīs: *in the country.* **jacēns**: (*which was*) *lying.*

266. Templum Jovis: the one begun by Tarquinius Priscus. **ipsa**: *with her own hand.*

267. Hanc ob causam: when a noun is limited by an adjective or a pronoun, the preposition very often stands between the two. **in exitium**: *for the destruction.* **eī**: *i.e.* against him.

268. si . . . esset: *esset* is in the subjunctive as the result of attraction to the subjunctive *coërcērēt.* **īnsolentiōrēs**: *too arrogant.* **expulsīs rēgibus**: *after the expulsion of the kings.* **Collātīnō**: *from Collatinus* (dative). **Placuerat**: *they had ordained*, lit. *it had pleased* (*them*). **in ējus locum**: *in his place.*

269. urbī: *against the city.* **inter sēsē occīdērunt**: *killed each other.* **Rōmānī . . . victōrēs recessērunt**: *the Romans retired as victors; victōrēs* is the predicate nominative. **lūxērunt**: from *lūgeō*.

270. Horātius Cocles: read Macaulay's *Horatius at the Bridge* (*Lays of Ancient Rome*) for a spirited account of Horatius's achievement. **ad suōs**: *to his friends.*

271. eō cōnsiliō, *etc.: with this design*, viz. *to kill the king;* the clause *ut . . . occīderet* is in apposition with *cōnsiliō.* **īgnibus allātīs:** *by bringing in fires; allātīs* is from *afferō.* **terrēret:** *i.e. endeavored to frighten him.* **accēnsae:** *burning*, lit. *kindled.* **cōnsūmpta esset:** this loss of his right hand was the origin of the name Scaevola, 'the left-handed.' **conjūrāsse:** a shortened form for *conjūrāvisse;* § 116, 1. **prīvātus:** *as a private citizen.*

272. post rēgēs exāctōs: *after the expulsion of the kings.* **trāns Aniēnem:** hardly more than three or four miles from the city. **fābulam dē ventre,** *etc.:* according to the fable, the limbs of the body once rebelled and refused longer to furnish food for the stomach. Menenius pointed out that the governing class at Rome was really just as essential to the welfare of the state, as was the stomach to the welfare of the body. **tribūnī:** at first two in number, later five, and ultimately ten. By their power of intercession they could protect plebeians from the unjust treatment of which the patrician magistrates were often guilty.

273. quīntum mīlliārium urbis: *fifth milestone from the city.* **Quō factō:** *and when this had been done.* **ut prōditor:** *as a traitor.*

274. duce Fabiō: *under the leadership of Fabius.* **hostēs:** obj. of *vīcissent.* **dolō ūsī:** *having employed strategy.* **exortō:** from *exorior.* **Ūnus:** *one only.*

275. trecentēsimō et alterō: *the three hundred and second.* **ab urbe conditā:** *from the founding of the city.*

276. lūdī litterārīī: the two words together mean *school*, lit. *a school for letters* (reading and writing), as opposed, for example, to a gladiatorial school, where gladiators were trained. **prīncipum fīliōs:** as hostages. **in castra hostium:** *i.e.* of the Romans. **manibus . . . vinctīs:** *with his hands tied behind his back.* **quibus . . . agerent:** *with which to drive.* **Camillō crīminī . . . datum est:** lit. *it was set against Camillus for a charge, i.e.* Camillus was accused. **triumphāsset:** =*triumphāvisset.* **damnātus:** understand *est* from *expulsus est.*

277. Paulō post: *post* is here an adverb. **Gallī Senonēs**: a tribe from northern Italy. **ad Alliam**: the Allia was a small river flowing into the Tiber about eleven miles from Rome. **occupārunt**: = *occupāvērunt.* **in eō**, *etc.*: *were on the point of purchasing*, lit. *were in this* (*viz.*), *that they should purchase; ut . . . emerent* explains *eō.*

278. quārtō mīlliāriō: *at the fourth milestone;* abl. of place, without the prep; § 228, 1, *b.*

279. sēcum: = *cum sē;* the preposition *cum* is always thus appended to the personal and reflexive pronouns. **obtulit**: from *offerō.* **armātus**: *in arms.* **eī suprā dextrum**, *etc.*: *perched above his right arm*, lit. *above the right arm to him.* **Ita factum est**: *thus it happened.* **nūllō negōtiō**: *with no difficulty, i.e. without difficulty.*

280. dictātōris: on occasions of great public danger, the Romans often appointed a dictator, who had absolute power. His period of office was limited to six months. **Quī cum**: *when he.* **magister equitum**: the master of the horse was appointed by the dictator and ranked next to him. **nactus**: from *nancīscor.* **capitis damnātus est**: *was condemned to death*, lit. *of his head* (*i.e. of his life*).

281. post: adv. **faciendum**: *i.e. faciendum esse.* **aut . . . aut**: *either . . . or.* **dīmittendōs**: understand *esse.* **sub jugum**: in token of submission; the yoke was made by setting two spears in the ground and laying a third across the top.

282. poposcērunt: from *poscō.* **agerentur**: subjunctive by attraction to *renūntiārent.*

283. per noctem: *by night.* **adversīs vulneribus**: *with wounds in front.* **etiam mortuōs**: *even in death.* **Ego cum tālibus virīs . . . subigam**: this is equivalent to a conditional sentence of the second type, *If I should have such soldiers, I should subdue.*

284. perrēxit: from *pergō*. **ad Praeneste**: *to the vicinity of Praeneste;* to say: *to Praeneste*, the accusative alone would have sufficed. **mīlliāriō**, *etc.: at the eighteenth milestone;* abl. of place, without the prep. **exercitūs**: objective gen. depending upon *terrōre; fear of the army.* **dē captīvīs redimendīs**: *with regard to ransoming the captives.* **sī trānsīret**: this is virtually a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, since *prōmitteret* is practically equivalent to *said he would give him.*

285. admīrātiōne tenērētur: in English, we say: *to be filled with admiration.* **eā condiciōne**: explained by the following *ut*-clause. **nisi recessisset**: *unless he should withdraw.*

286. interjectō annō: *after the lapse of a year*, lit. *a year having been put between.* **"Ille est Fabricius quī"**: *Fabricius is one who.* **ā Tarentō**: *from the vicinity of Tarentum;* to say: *from Tarentum*, the ablative alone would have sufficed. **ad Argōs**: *near Argi* (*Argos*).

287. trājēcērunt: here intransitive, — *crossed over.*

288. Paucīs annīs interjectīs: *after the lapse of a few years.* **in fidem**: *into allegiance.* **Quam cum**, *etc.: when Regulus was unwilling to grant this.* **nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus**: *except on very hard terms.* **captus**: for *captus est.*

289. dēsiisse: from *dēsinō*. **nē . . . facerent**: *not to make.* **illōs . . . habēre**: indirect discourse dependent on the idea of *saying* involved in *suāsit.* **tantī nōn esse**: *that it was not worth while*, lit. *of so great account; tantī* is a predicate genitive of quality, with some such word as *pretī* (*of value*) understood. **ut . . . redderentur**: this substantive clause of result is the logical subject of *esse.*

290. captae, dēmersae, capta: understand *sunt* with these.

GENERAL LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Note.—Of the sixteen hundred words in this Vocabulary, only about 750 are employed in the Lessons of the body of the book. The remainder occur in the Reading Selections, the Fables, and the Roman History. Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral 1 following the present indicative.

A

A., abbreviation for **Aulus**, *Aulus.*

ā, ab, prep. w. abl., *from; by; of.*

abeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go away;* of time, *pass.*

abiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *throw away, cast.*

absēns (pres. participle of **absum**), **entis,** *absent.*

abstineō, ēre, tinuī, *abstain from.*

absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be absent, be distant* (§ 125).

ac (atque), *and, and also;* **ac** is not used before vowels.

Acca Lārentia, ae, f., *Acca Larentia,* a woman's name.

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *draw near.*

accendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus, *kindle.*

accidō, ere, idī, *happen.*

accingō, ere, īnxī, īnctus, *gird.*

accipiō, ere, ēpī, eptus, *receive.*

accurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run to, run up; hasten.*

accūsō, 1, *accuse.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, vigorous, keen, severe.*

acerbus, a, um, *unripe, sour.*

aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*

ācriter, *sharply, fiercely.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards; for* (denoting purpose); *near.*

addō, ere, idī, itus, *add.*

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead on, impel.*

adeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *approach, go to, visit.*

adimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *take away.*

aditus, ūs, m., *approach.*

adjaceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *lie near, be situated near.*

adjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *join to; annex.*
adjuvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus, *help.*
administrō, 1, *perform.*
admīrātiō, ōnis, f., *admiration.*
admīror, ārī, ātus sum, *admire.*
admodum, *quite, very much.*
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, *remind, warn.*
adolēscō, ere, lēvī, *grow up.*
adorior, īrī, ortus sum, *attack.*
adsum, adesse, adfuī, *be present, be at hand* (§ 125).
adulēscēns, centis, m., *young man.*
adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *arrive.*
adventus, ūs, m., *arrival.*
adversārius, iī, m., *adversary.*
adversum, adversus, prep. w. acc., *against.*
adversus, a, um, *adverse; in front* (of wounds).
advesperāscō, ere, *to grow dark.*
aedificium, ī (iī), n., *building.*
aedificō, 1, *build.*
Aenēās, ae, m., *Aeneas,* a man's name (§ 22).
aequālis, is, c., *mate.*
aequālis, e, *equal.*
aequitās, tātis, f., *justice.*
aequus, qua, quum, *level.*
āēr, āēris, m., *air.*
aestās, tātis, f., *summer.*
aetās, tātis, f., *age, time of life.*
afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring* (§ 129).
Āfrica, ae, f., *Africa.*
ager, agrī, m., *field, land.*
agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart.*
agmen, minis, n., *army (on the march), column.*
agnus, ī, m., *lamb.*
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *do; drive; spend.*
agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*
agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture.*
Agrippa, ae, m., *Agrippa,* a man's name.
ājō, defective (§ 135), *say;* pres. and perf. 3d sing. **āit.**
āla, ae, f., *wing.*
alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*
Alba Longa, Albae Longae, f., *Alba Longa,* name of a town.
Albānus, a, um, *Alban.*
albus, a, um, *white.*
aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*
aliquandō, *once upon a time; formerly.*
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., *some* (§ 91).
aliquis, aliquid, *some one, something* (§ 91).
aliquot, indecl., *several, some.*
alius, a, ud, *other, another, else* (§ 66).
Allia, ae, f., *Allia,* a river.
alligō, 1, *bind, fasten.*
Allobrogēs, um, *the Allobroges,* a Gallic tribe.
alloquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *address, speak to.*
alō, ere, aluī, altus, *nourish.*
alter, era, erum, *the other; second* (§ 66).
altitūdō, inis, f., *height; depth.*
altus, a, um, *high; deep;* as

noun, **altum, ī**, n., *the deep (sea)*.
amīcē, adv., *in a friendly manner*.
amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship*.
amīcus, a, um, *friendly*.
amīcus, ī, m., *friend*.
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *lose*.
amnis, is, m., *river*.
amō, 1, *love*.
ampliō, 1, *enlarge*.
amplius, adv., *more*.
amplus, a, um, *ample, glorious*.
Amūlius, ī (iī), m., *Amulius*, a man's name.
an, interrog. particle, *or, whether*.
Anchīsēs, ae, m., *Anchises*, a man's name (§ 22).
ancora, ae, f., *anchor*.
Ancus Mārcius, gen. **Ancī Mārcī (iī)**, m., *Ancus Marcius*, fourth king of Rome.
angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass*.
angustus, a, um, *narrow*.
animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *notice*.
animal, mālis, n., *animal*.
animus, ī, m., *mind, soul; courage, heart*.
Aniō, Aniēnis, m., *Anio*, name of a river.
annectō, ere, nexuī, nexus, *tie to*.
annus, ī, m., *year*.
annuus, a, um, *for one year*.
ante, prep. w. acc., *before, in front of*; adv., *before, ago*.
anteā, *previously, before*.
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *precede*.
antequam, conj., *before*.
antīquus, a, um, *ancient*.
ānulus, ī, m., *ring*.
anus, ūs, f., *old woman*.
apertus, a, um, *open*.
apparātus, ūs, m., *luxury*.
appāreō, ēre, uī, *appear*.
appellō, 1, *name, call*.
appetō, ere, īvī, or iī, ītus, *seek, try to get*.
Appius, ī (iī), m., *Appius*, a man's name.
appropinquō, 1, *approach*.
Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April*.
apud, prep. w. acc., *among, at, with, at the home of*.
aqua, ae, f., *water*.
aquila, ae, f., *eagle*.
Aquitānia, ae, f., *Aquitania*, a district of Gaul.
āra, ae, f., *altar*.
arbitror, trārī, trātus sum, *consider*.
arbor, oris, f., *tree*.
arceō, ēre, uī, *keep off; keep away*.
arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *summon*.
Ardea, ae, f., *Ardea*, a Latin town.
ārdeo, ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *burn*.
ārea, ae, f., *courtyard*.
argentum, ī, n., *silver*.
Argī, ōrum, m., *Argos*, name of a town.
Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus*.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.
armātūra, ae, f., *equipment*.
armātus, a, um, *armed*.
armilla, ae, f., *bracelet*.

armō, 1, *arm.*
arripiō, ere, uī, eptus, *seize.*
arrogō, 1, *lay claim to.*
Arrūns, runtis, m., *Arruns,* a man's name.
arx, arcis, f., *citadel.*
Ascanius, ī (iī), m., *Ascanius,* son of Aeneas.
Asia, ae, f., *Asia.*
Asina, ae, m., *Asina,* a man's name.
asinus, ī, m., *ass.*
assentātor, ōris, m., *flatterer.*
asylum, ī, n., *place of refuge.*
at, *but.*
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens.*
Athēnodōrus, ī, m., *Athenodorus,* a man's name.
Atīlius, ī (iī), *Atilius,* a man's name.
atque, *and, and also;* see **ac.**
Atticus, ī, m., *Atticus,* a friend of Cicero.
attulī, perf. of **afferō.**
auctōritās, tātis, f., *authority, influence.*
audācter, *courageously, bravely.*
audāx, gen. **audācis,** *courageous.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *dare.*
audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *hear.*
aufugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee.*
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase* (tr.).
Aulus, ī, m., *Aulus,* a man's name.
aureus, a, um, *golden.*
aurīga, ae, m., *charioteer.*
aurum, ī, n., *gold.*
aut, *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*
autem, *however; but.*
autumnus, ī, m., *autumn.*
auxilium, ī (iī), n., *aid, help;* in pl. **auxilia, ōrum,** n., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*
Avāricum, ī, n., *Avaricum.*
Aventīnus, ī, *Aventine,* a hill of Rome.
āvertō, ere, tī, versus, *avert, turn aside.*
avicula, ae, f., *small bird.*
avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

Bacēnis, is, f., *Bacenis,* a forest in Germany.
barba, ae, f., *beard.*
barbarus, ī, m., *a barbarian;* adj., **us, a, um,** *barbarian.*
beātus, a, um, *happy.*
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *Belgians,* a Gallic tribe.
bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*
bellō, 1, *make war, carry on war.*
bellum, ī, n., *war.*
bene, adv., *well* (§ 77).
beneficium, ī (iī), n., *a kindness.*
benīgnē, *kindly, graciously.*
bēstia, ae, f., *beast.*
Bibulus, ī, m., *Bibulus,* a man's name.
bīduum, ī, n., *two days.*
Bōjī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Boji,* an ancient tribe.
bonus, a, um, *good;* in pl. **bona, ōrum,** n., *property* (§ 236, 1).
bōs, bovis, m., *ox;* gen. pl. **boum** (§ 41).

bracchium, ī (iī), n., *arm.*
brevis, e, *short, brief;* **brevī**, *within a short time.*
Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*
Brūtus, ī, m., *Brutus*, a man's name.

C., abbreviation for **Gāius**, *Gaius.*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*
caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*
caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut, slay, kill.*
caelum, ī, n., *heaven.*
Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
calamitās, tātis, f., *calamity.*
Camillus, ī, m., *Camillus*, a man's name.
Campānia, ae, f., *Campania.*
canis, is, c., *dog.*
capessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *take;* **fugam capessere**, *flee.*
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take; adopt; capture.*
Capitōlium, ī (iī), n., *the Capitol.*
capra, ae, f., *she-goat.*
captīva, ae, f., *captive.*
captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*
caput, itis, n., *head.*
carcer, eris, m., *prison.*
carpentum, ī, n., *chariot.*
carpō, ere, psī, ptus, *pluck; enjoy.*
Carthāginiēnsis, e, *Carthaginian;* **Carthāginiēnsēs, ium**, m., *Carthaginians.*
cārus, a, um, *dear.*
cassīta, ae, f., *lark.*
castellum, ī, n., *fort.*
castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp.*
cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, fortune; misfortune.*
catēna, ae, f., *chain.*
Catilīna, ae, m., *Catiline.*
Catō, ōnis, m., *Cato*, a man's name.
Catulus, ī, m., *Catulus*, a man's name.
causa, ae, f., *cause, reason, condition;* **causā**, abl., *for the sake of;* the dependent genitive precedes **causā**.
cautē, *cautiously*, comp. **cautius.**
caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautūrus, *be on one's guard.*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *yield, withdraw.*
celer, eris, e, *swift.*
celeritās, tātis, f., *speed.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
cēlō, 1, *conceal.*
cēnsus, ūs, m., *census.*
centum, *hundred*, indecl.
centuriō, ōnis, m., *centurion.*
cernō, ere, *perceive.*
certāmen, inis, n., *contest.*
certē, *certainly; at any rate.*
certus, a, um, *sure;* comp. **certior** in phrase **certior fierī**, *be informed;* **certiōrem facere**, *inform.*
cessātor, ōris, m., *loiterer.*
cēterī, ae, a, *the rest; the others.*
cibus, ī, m., *food.*
Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Cicero*, the Roman orator.
Cīneās, ae, m., *Cineas*, a man's name (§ 22).

circiter, adv., *about.*
circumarō, 1, *plough around.*
circumdō, dăre, dedī, dātus, *surround, place around.*
circumeō, īre, iī, itus, *go around, surround* (§ 132).
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *surround.*
citerior, ius, comp. adj., *nearer; hither* (§ 73, 1).
citrā, prep. w. acc., *this side of.*
cīvis, is, c., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*
cīvitās, tātis, f., *state.*
clam, *secretly.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, shouting.*
clārus, a, um, *clear, loud; distinguished.*
classis, classis, f., *fleet.*
Claudius, ī (iī), m., *Claudius,* a man's name.
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close.*
claustrum, ī, n., *fastening.*
clēmēns, gen. **entis,** *merciful.*
clipeus, ī, m., *shield.*
cloāca, ae, f., *sewer.*
Cn.; abbreviation of **Gnaeus,** *Gnaeus,* a man's name.
Cocles, itis, m., *Cocles,* a man's name.
coepī, coepisse, *began, have begun* (§ 133).
coërceō, ēre, uī, itus, *hold in check, confine.*
cōgitō, 1, *think.*
cognōmen, inis, n., *name, surname.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *force, compel; collect.*
cohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *check, restrain.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (division of a legion).
Collātīnus, ī, m., *Collatinus,* a man's name.
collātus, perf. pass. ptc. of **cōnferō.**
collēga, ae, m., *colleague.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*
collocō, 1, *place, arrange, station.*
colloquium, ī (iī), n., *conference.*
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *confer.*
collum, ī, n., *neck.*
colōnia, ae, f., *colony.*
combūrō, ere, ussī, ūstus, *to burn up, consume.*
Comitium, ī (iī), n., *Comitium,* a place of public assembly at Rome.
commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*
commemorō, 1, *recount.*
comminuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *dash to pieces.*
committō, ere, mīsī, missus, *bring together;* with **proelium** or **pūgnam,** *to join battle.*
commoror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, sojourn.*
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, touch, stir up, excite; induce.*
commūniō, īre, iī, ītus, *strongly fortify.*
commūnis, e, *common.*

commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
comparō, 1, *get ready.*
compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *force.*
comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, *find out.*
complector, ī, plexus sum, *embrace.*
compleō, ēre, plēvī, plētus, *fill up.*
complūrēs, plūra, gen. **ium,** *very many.*
comprehendō, ere, endī, ēnsus, *arrest.*
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *grant.*
conciliō, 1, *reconcile, win over.*
concilium, ī (iī), n., *council.*
concordia, ae, f., *harmony.*
concurrō, ere, ī, cursum, *run together.*
concursus, ūs, m., *a running together, concourse.*
condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
condō, ere, didī, ditus, *found, build; hide, conceal.*
condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *hire.*
cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *bring together;* **sē cōnferre,** *betake one's self* (§ 129).
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *exhaust.*
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, *trust,* semi-dep. (§ 187, II, *a*).
cōnfirmō, 1, *encourage; establish, confirm.*
cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee for refuge.*
coniciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *hurl; cast; put.*
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *unite.*
conjūnx, jugis, c., *husband; wife.*
conjūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
conjūrō, 1, *conspire.*
Conōn, ōnis, m., *Conon.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt.*
cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *follow up.*
cōnsenēscō, ere, senuī, *grow old.*
cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *acquire.*
cōnserō, ere, uī, tus, *join.*
cōnservō, 1, *preserve, keep.*
cōnsīdō, ere, ēdī, essus, *settle.*
cōnsilium, ī (iī), n., *plan; council; advice.*
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, *consist.*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight.*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see.*
cōnspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *catch sight of, observe.*
cōnstantia, ae, f., *perseverance.*
cōnstat, impers., *it is evident* (§ 138).
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide, determine.*
cōnsul, ulis, m., *consul.*
cōnsulātus, ūs, m., *consulship.*
cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *use up, consume.*
contemnō, ere, tempsī, temptus, *despise.*
contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *hurry, hasten; contend.*
contentus, a, um, *contented.*
contineō, ēre, uī, *confine, hold in check.*

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against, opposite.*
contrārius, a, um, *contrary to, opposite.*
controversia, ae, f., *controversy.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
convalēscō, ere, valuī, *recover, regain strength.*
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together, assemble.*
convocō, 1, *call together.*
cōpia, ae, f., *plenty;* in pl. **cōpiae, ārum**, *troops, forces.*
Corinthus, ī, f., *Corinth,* a city of Greece.
Coriolānus, ī, m., *Coriolanus,* a man's name.
Corioli, ōrum, m., *Corioli,* a Latin town.
Cornēlius, ī (iī), *Cornelius,* a man's name.
cornū, ūs, n., *horn;* in military sense, *wing* of an army.
corōna, ae, f., *garland.*
corpus, oris, n., *body.*
corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *ruin; bribe.*
Corvīnus, ī, m., *Corvinus,* a man's name.
corvus, ī, m., *raven.*
cottīdiē, *every day, daily.*
crās, *to-morrow.*
Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus,* a man's name.
crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, numerous.*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe* (§ 187, II, *a*).
Cremera, ae, f., *Cremera,* a river in Etruria.
creō, 1, *make, beget; elect.*
crīmen, inis, n., *charge, accusation.*
crūdēlis, e, *cruel.*
culpō, 1, *blame.*
1. **cum**, prep. w. abl., *with.*
2. **cum**, conj., *when; whereupon; because, since; though;* **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but also* (§ 341, 3).
cunctātiō, ōnis, f., *delay.*
cupiditās, tātis, f., *desire, eagerness.*
cupidus, a, um, *fond, eager.*
cūr, *why?*
Curēs, ium, f., *Cures,* a Sabine town.
cūria, ae, f., *ward.*
Cūriātius, ī (iī); m., pl., **Cūriātiī, ōrum, m.**, *Curiatii,* an Alban family.
Curius, ī (iī), m., *Curius,* consul 290 B.C.
cūrō, 1, *care for, take care of.*
Cursor, ōris, m., *Cursor,* a man's name.
cursus, ūs, m., *course, speed.*
cūstōdia, ae, f., *guard, a guard, custody.*

damnō, 1, *condemn;* **capitis damnāre**, *condemn to death.*
Dāmoclēs, is, m., *Damocles,* a Syracusan.
Dānuvius, ī (iī), m., *the Danube.*
Dārīus, iī, *Darius,* king of Persia.
dē, prep. w. abl., *concerning; of, from, down from.*
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe;* with another verb, *ought;* pass., *to be due.*

dēbilitō, 1, *weaken.*
dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *withdraw; die.*
decem, indecl., *ten.*
decemvirī, ōrum, m., *decemvirs*, a board of ten men.
dēcernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus, *decree; decide* (by combat), *fight.*
decimus, a, um, *tenth.*
dēclārō, 1, *make clear, show.*
dēcurrō, ere, currī, cursūrus, *run down; rush, hasten.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
dēdō, ere, didī, dēditus, *give up, surrender.*
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead away.*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt.*
dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus, *defend.*
dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f., *defence.*
dēflectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *turn aside.*
deinde, *then, afterwards.*
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *sink down.*
dēlātus, perf. pass. participle of dēferō.
dēlectō, 1, *delight.*
dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *destroy.*
dēlīberō, 1, *deliberate, consult.*
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose.*
delphīnus, ī, m., *dolphin.*
Dēmarātus, ī, m., *Demaratus*, a man's name.
dēmergō, ere, mersī, mersus, *sink.*
dēmetō, ere, messuī, messus, *reap.*
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *let fall.*
dēnārius, ī (iī), m., *denarius*, a Roman coin worth about eighteen cents.
dēnique, *finally.*
dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.*
dēnuō, *again.*
dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum, *lay waste.*
dēprehendō, dere, dī, hēnsus, *catch.*
dērīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh to scorn.*
dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *abandon, desert.*
dēsinō, ere, siī, situm, *cease.*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, *cease.*
dēspērō, 1, *despair, despair of.*
dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *despise.*
dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, *be wanting, fail* (§ 125).
dētrahō, ere, trāxi, trāctus, *snatch away.*
dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, damage, harm.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
dēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer.*
dexter, tra, trum, *right;* as subst. (sc. **manus**), *right hand.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *say; utter; appoint; call.*
dictātor, ōris, m., *dictator.*
diēs, ēī, m. or f., *day.*
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *differ* (§ 129).
difficilis, e, *difficult.*
difficulter, adv., from adj. **difficilis**, *with difficulty.*

digitus, ī, m., *finger.*
dignitās, tātis, f., *dignity.*
dignus, a, um, *worthy.*
diligentia, ae, f., *diligence.*
dimicō, 1, *contend.*
dimittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *let go, dismiss, disband.*
Dionysius, ī (iī), m., *Dionysius*, a tyrant of Syracuse.
diripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *plunder.*
diruō, ere, ruī, rūtus, *tear down, destroy.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart, withdraw.*
disciplīna, ae, f., *discipline.*
discordia, ae, f., *strife, discord.*
discordō, 1, *be at variance, quarrel.*
discrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *mark out; divide into classes.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *distribute.*
dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement.*
dissidium, ī (iī), n., *dissension.*
distribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *distribute.*
diū, adv., *a long time.*
diūturnitās, tātis, f., *long duration.*
dīvidō, ere, īsī, īsus, *divide.*
dīvīnus, a, um, *sacred.*
dīvitiae, ārum, f. pl., *riches.*
dō, dăre, dedī, dătus, *give, render; put, set.*
doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, *teach; inform of.*
dolor, ōris, m., *grief.*
dolus, ī, m., *deceit, cunning.*
dominātiō, ōnis, f., *rule, tyranny.*
dominus, ī, m., *master.*
Domitius, ī (iī), m., *Domitius*, a man's name.
domō, āre, uī, itus, *subdue.*
domus, ūs, f., *house, home* (§ 49, 4).
dōnec, *until.*
dōnō, 1, *present.*
dōnum, ī, n., *gift.*
dubitō, 1, *doubt, be in doubt; hesitate, waver.*
ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead.*
Duīlius, ī (iī), m., *Duilius*, a man's name.
dum, *while; as long as; until.*
Dumnorīx, rīgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a chief of the Haedui.
duo, duae, duo, *two* (§ 80, 1).
duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
dūrus, a, um, *hard, severe.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader.*

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., *out of, of, from;* ē is not used before vowels or h.
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forth.*
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *make, render; do, bring about.*
effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, *dig up.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *escape.*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour out.*
Ēgeria, ae, f., *Egeria*, name of a nymph.
ego, meī, *I.*
ēgredior, gredī, gressus sum, *march out.*

ēgregius, a, um, *excellent, especial.*
ēiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *thrust out;* **sē ēicere,** *rush forth.*
ējus modī, *of that kind* (§ 203, 1).
ēlābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, *glide away, escape; elapse.*
ēlātus, perf. partic. of **efferō.**
elephantus, ī, m., *elephant.*
emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
enim, *for;* cannot begin a sentence.
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go* (§ 132).
eōdem, *to the same place.*
Epamīnōndas, ae, m., *Epaminondas,* a Theban (§ 22).
Ēpīrus, ī, f., *Epirus.*
epulae, ārum, f. pl., *feast.*
eques, itis, m., *horseman;* in pl., *horsemen, cavalry.*
equester, tris, tre, *equestrian.*
equīnus, a, um, *of horses;* **sēta equīna,** *horse-hair.*
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
ergā, prep. w. acc., *toward.*
ergō, *therefore.*
ēripiō, ere, uī, eptus, *snatch away, take away.*
errō, 1, *err, be mistaken.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally.*
et, *and;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and;* as adv., *also, even.*
etiam, *also; even.*
Etrūria, ae, f., *Etruria.*
Etrūscus, a, um, *Etruscan;* as subs., *an Etruscan.*
etsī, *although.*
ēvellō, ere, vellī, vulsus, *pull out.*
ēvertō, ere, tī, sus, *overturn, destroy.*
ex, prep. w. abl., see **ē.**
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *leave, depart from.*
excitō, 1, *stir up, arouse.*
exeō, īre, iī, itum, *go forth, go out* (§ 132).
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus, *exercise; practice.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
exhauriō, īre, hausī, haustus, *drain; impoverish.*
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive out, banish.*
exiguus, a, um, *small, short.*
eximius, a, um, *extraordinary.*
exīstimō, 1, *think, consider.*
exitium, ī (iī), n., *destruction.*
exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage.*
exorior, orīrī, ortus sum, *arise.*
expediō, īre, īvī, ītus, *extricate.*
expedītus, a, um, *unencumbered, light-armed; easy.*
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive out, banish.*
experior, īrī, pertus sum, *try, test.*
explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*
explōrō, 1, *explore, examine.*
expūgnō, 1, *take by storm.*
exquīsītus, a, um, *elaborate.*
exsilium, ī (iī), n., *exile.*
exsistō, ere, stitī, *arise.*
exspectō, 1, *expect, await.*
exstinguō, ere, stīnxī, stīnctus, *destroy;* in pass., *be put to death, die.*

extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside, beyond.*
extrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, *extract, draw forth.*
extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, outermost; end of* (§ 73, 2).

Fabius, ī (iī), m., *Fabius,* a man's name; **Fabiī, ōrum,** m. pl., *Fabii,* a Roman gens.
Fabricius, ī (iī), m., *Fabricius.*
fābula, ae, f., *fable.*
facile, *easily.*
facilis, e, *easy.*
facinus, inoris, n., *crime, deed.*
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do,* pass. irreg. (§ 131).
factiō, ōnis, f., *faction.*
facultās, tātis, f., *supply;* pl., *means, resources.*
Faleriī, ōrum, m., *Falerii,* a city.
Faliscī, ōrum, m., *Faliscans,* inhabitants of Falerii.
falx, falcis, f., *sickle.*
fāma, ae, f.. *reputation, report.*
famēs, is, f., *hunger;* abl. sing. irreg. **famē.**
familiāritās, tātis, f., *intimacy.*
familia, ae, f., *household, family.*
famula, ae, f., *servant; slave.*
fascis, is, m., *bundle.*
fātum, ī, n., *fate.*
faucēs, ium, f. pl., *throat, jaws.*
Faustulus, ī, m., *Faustulus,* a man's name.
faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *favor.*
favor, ōris, m., *favor, good will.*
fēlēs, is, f., *cat.*
fēlīciter, *successfully.*
fēlīx, gen. **fēlīcis,** *fortunate, happy.*
fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*
fera, ae, f., *wild beast.*
ferāx, gen. **ferācis,** *fertile.*
ferē, *almost, about, practically, generally.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry, bring; lift, raise; lend* (of help); *say* (§ 129).
ferrum, ī, n., *iron; sword.*
ferveō, ēre, buī, *grow hot.*
fēstum, ī, n., *festival.*
fidēs, ēī, f., *fidelity, loyalty, protection; confidence, allegiance.*
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., *trust* (§ 187, II, *a*).
fīdūcia, ae, f., *confidence.*
fīlia, ae, f., *daughter* (§ 21, 2, *e*).
fīlius, ī (iī), m., *son.*
fīniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *finish, terminate.*
fīnis, is, m., *end, boundary;* in pl., *territory.*
fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *become, be made; occur, happen;* pass. of **faciō** (§ 131).
fīrmiter (fīrmius, fīrmissimē), *firmly.*
fīrmus, a, um, *firm, strong.*
flāgitō, 1, *demand.*
flamma, ae, f., *flame, fire.*
flectō, ere, xī, xus, *bend, induce.*
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*
flūmen, inis, n., *river.*
fluvius, ī (iī), m., *river.*
focus, ī, m., *hearth.*

foedus, eris, n., *treaty.*
fore, fut. infin. of **sum** (p. 57, footnote 3).
forte, *by chance.*
fortis, e, *brave.*
fortiter, *bravely.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune;* pl. **fortūnae, ārum**, f., *fortune* (possessions).
fortūnātus, a, um, *lucky.*
forum, ī, n., *forum; market-place.*
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain.*
fruor, ī, *enjoy* (§ 218, 1).
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape from.*
fugō, 1, *put to flight.*
fulmen, inis, n., *thunderbolt.*
funditor, ōris, m., *slinger.*
fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour, pour out;* of troops, *to rout.*
furcula, ae, f., *fork;* **Furculae Caudīnae**, *Caudine Forks.*
Fūrius, ī (iī), m., *Furius*, a man's name.
fūrtum, ī, n., *theft.*
futūrus, a, um, future participle of **sum**.

Gāius, ī, m., *Gaius*, a man's name. (Abbreviated **C.**)
Galba, ae, m., *Galba*, a man's name.
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*
Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul.*
geminī, ōrum, m. pl., *twins.*
gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*
Genēva, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe; gens* (division of the Roman people).
genus, eris, n., *race, stock, family; kind.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *carry, wear, wage, perform;* of an office, *hold.*
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus, *beget, bring forth;* pass., *be born.*
gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword.*
Gnaeus, ī, m., *Gnaeus*, a man's name. (Abbreviated **Cn.**)
gradus, ūs, m., *step.*
Graecia, ae, f., *Greece.*
Graecus, ī, m., *a Greek.*
grātia, ae, f., *influence.*
grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome, grateful.*
gravis, e, *heavy, difficult; severe, serious.*
grūs, gruis, f., *crane.*

habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus, *have, possess, hold.*
habitō, 1, *dwell.*
Haeduī, ōrum, m., *Haedui*, a Gallic tribe.
haedus, ī, m., *kid.*
Hamilcar, caris, m., *Hamilcar*, a man's name.
Hannibal, balis, m., *Hannibal*, a man's name.

hasta, ae, f., *spear.*
haud, *not.*
Helvētii, ōrum, m., *Helvetii,* a Gallic tribe.
Herennius, ī (iī), m., *Herennius,* a man's name.
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
Hibērus, ī, m., *the Hiberus* (modern *Ebro*), a river in Spain.
1. **hīc, haec, hōc,** pron., *this.*
2. **hīc,** adv., *here, at this place.*
hiemō, 1, *pass the winter.*
hiems, is, f., *winter.*
Hierō, ōnis, m., *Hiero,* ruler of Syracuse.
hinc, *hence;* **hinc . . . hinc,** *on this side . . . on that side.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
homō, minis, c., *man.*
honestās, tātis, f., *integrity.*
honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
honōrificē, *honorably, with respect.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
Horātius, ī (iī), m., *Horatius,* a man's name; **Horātiī, ōrum,** *Horatii,* a Roman family.
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *exhort, urge, encourage.*
Hostīlius, ī (iī), m., *Hostilius,* a man's name.
hostis, is, c., *enemy;* especially frequent in pl., *the enemy.*
hūc, *hither.*
hūmānus, a, um, *human.*

ibi, *there, in that place.*
(icō), ere, īcī, ictus, *strike.*
idcircō, *therefore.*
īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.*
īdōlon, ī, n., *spectre.*
idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*
igitur, *therefore, accordingly; now;* (stands usually after first word in clause).
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly.*
īgnis, is, m., *fire.*
ignōminia, ae, f., *ignominy, disgrace.*
ille, illa, illud, *that; that one; he, she, it.*
imāgo, inis, f., *image, ghost.*
imbēcillis, e, *weak, poor.*
imber, imbris, m., *rain-storm.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* in pl., *baggage.*
impediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *impede, hinder.*
imperātor, tōris, m., *commander.*
imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced.*
imperium, ī (iī), n., *rule, sway.*
imperō, 1, *command; demand; order; reign; levy.*
impetus (ūs), m., *attack* (§ 57, 4).
implōrō, 1, *entreat.*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place upon.*
improbō, 1, *disapprove, reject.*
īmus, a, um, *lowest* (§ 73, 2).
in, prep. w. abl., *in, on,* denoting rest in a place; w. acc., *into, in, against, to, toward.*
inaequē, *unfairly.*
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus, *set on fire.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
incidō, ere, ī, *fall upon; fall in with.*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *begin.*
incitō, 1, *urge on, encourage.*
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus, *shut in.*
incognitus, a, um, *unknown.*
incohō, 1, *begin.*
incola, ae, m., *inhabitant.*
incolō, ere, coluī, cultus, *inhabit.*
incolumis, e, *unharmed, uninjured.*
incommodum, ī, n., *disaster.*
incursiō, ōnis, f., *incursion, attack.*
indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *proclaim, appoint;* with **bellum**, *to declare war.*
indolēs, is, f., *nature; character.*
indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead in; draw in; draw.*
ineō, īre, iī, itus, *enter upon;* **cōnsilium inīre**, *form a plan* (§ 132).
inermis, e, *unarmed.*
īnferior, us, *lower, inferior* (§ 73, 2).
īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *bring upon, bring against; produce* (§ 129).
īnfēstus, a, um, *hostile.*
īnfimus, a, um, superl. of **īnferior** (§ 73, 2).
īnfīrmus, a, um, *weak.*
īnflō, 1, *blow out, inflate.*
īnfrendō, ere, *gnash.*
ingēns, gen., ingentis, *huge.*
ingenuus, a, um, *free-born.*
inhaereō, ēre, haesī, haesūrus, *stick fast.*
inhiō, 1, *be eager for* (lit. *gape for*), (§ 187, III).
inimīcus, a, um, *hostile.*
inimīcus, ī, m., *a (personal) enemy.*
initium, ī (iī), n., *beginning.*
injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice.*
innectō, ere, nexuī, nexus, *bind.*
innuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *beckon.*
inopia, ae, f., *lack, need.*
inquam; 3d sing. **inquit**; 3d pl. **inquiunt**, *say* (inserted between words of a direct quotation), (§ 134).
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush; plot; treachery.*
īnsīgnis, e, *distinguished.*
īnsiliō, īre, uī, *leap upon.*
īnsolēns, gen., **īnsolentis**, *insolent.*
īnstāns, pres. participle of **īnstō**.
īnstar, n., indecl., *like, equal.*
īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *institute; appoint.*
īnstitūtum, ī, n., *institution.*
īnstō, āre, itī, *press on, be eager.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *draw up, arrange; fit out, furnish, provide.*
īnsula, ae, f., *island.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *know, understand.*
intendō, ere, dī, tum, *stretch; fix.*
inter, prep. w. acc., *among, between, in the midst of.*
intercipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *take away.*
interdum, *at times, sometimes.*

intereā, *in the meanwhile.*
intereō, **īre**, **iī**, **itūrus**, *perish.*
interest, *it concerns*, impers. from **intersum.**
interficiō, **ere**, **fēcī**, **fectus**, *kill.*
intericiō, **ere**, **jēcī**, **jectus**, *throw between.*
interim, *in the meanwhile.*
interimō, **ere**, **ēmī**, **ēmptus**, *kill.*
interior, **ius**, *inner* (§ 73, 1).
interiōra, **um**, n. pl., *inner parts, places.*
interrēguum, **ī**, n., *interregnum.*
interrogō, 1, *ask.*
intersum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, *be present at.*
intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*
intrō, 1, *enter.*
intus, adv., *within.*
invādō, **ere**, **vāsī**, **vāsus**, *attack.*
inveniō, **īre**, **vēnī**, **ventus**, *find.*
invicem, *in turn.*
invideō, **ēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsum**, *envy.*
invidia, **ae**, f., *envy.*
invīsus, **a**, **um**, *hated, hateful.*
invītō, 1, *invite.*
invītus, **a**, **um**, *unwilling.*
ipse, **a**, **um**, *self.*
irrīdeō, **ēre**, **rīsī**, **rīsus**, *deride, ridicule.*
irritō, 1, *urge on, tempt.*
is, **ea**, **id**, *that; he, she, it;* pl. *they.*
iste, **a**, **ud**, *that; that of yours.*
ita, *so.*
Italia, **ae**, f., *Italy.*
Italus, **a**, **um**, *Italian;* as noun, m., *an Italian.*
itaque, *accordingly, and so.*
iter, **itineris**, n., *journey; march; way;* **iter facere**, *to march; travel.*
iterum, *again.*

jaceō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itūrus**, *lie, recline.*
jam, *already.*
Jāniculum, **ī**, n., the hill *Janiculum.*
jubeō, **ēre**, **jussī**, **jussus**, *order; bid.*
jūdicō, 1, *judge, adjudge.*
jugum, **ī**, n., *yoke; ridge* (of mountains).
Jūlius, **ī** (**iī**), m., *Julius*, a man's name.
jūmentum, **ī**, n., *beast of burden.*
jungō, **ere**, **jūnxī**, **jūnctus**, *join;* **societātem jungere**, *form a partnership.*
Jūnius, **ī** (**iī**), m., *Junius*, a man's name.
Juppiter, **Jovis**, m., *Jupiter.*
Jūra, **ae**, m., *the Jura*, chain of mountains on west of Switzerland.
jūrō, 1, *swear, take oath.*
jūs, **jūris**, n., *right, power.*
jūs jūrandum, **jūris jūrandī**, n., *oath.*
jūstus, **a**, **um**, *just.*
juvenca, **ae**, f., *heifer.*
juvenis, **is**, m., *a young man.*

Kalendae, **ārum**, f. pl., *Kalends* (first of the month).

L., abbreviation of **Lūcius**, *Lucius*, a man's name.
Labiēnus, **ī**, m., *Labienus*, a famous lieutenant of Caesar.
labor, **ōris**, m., *labor, exertion.*

labōrō, 1, *toil; suffer;* in battle, *be hard pressed.*
Lacedaemonius, a, um, *Spartan;* subs. *a Spartan.*
lacerō, 1, *mangle, tear in pieces.*
lacessō, ere, cessīvī (iī), ītus, *harass.*
lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful.*
Laevīnus, ī, m., *Laevinus*, a man's name.
laniō, 1, *tear in pieces.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
Latīnus, ī, m., *Latinus*, a man's name; also *a Latin.*
Latium, ī (iī), n., *Latium*, a part of Italy.
lātrō, 1, *bark.*
lātus, a, um, *broad, wide.*
laudō, 1, *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
Lāvīnia, ae, f., *Lavinia*, wife of Aeneas.
Lāvīnium, ī (iī), n., *Lavinium*, a town.
laxō, 1, *loosen.*
lectus, ī, m., *couch.*
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant; envoy.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose; read.*
Lentulus, ī, m., *Lentulus*, a man's name.
lentus, a, um, *sluggish, slow.*
leō, ōnis, m., *lion.*
lētālis, e, *fatal.*
levis, e, *light.*
lex, lēgis, f., *law.*
liber, brī, m., *book.*
līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*
līberī, ōrum, m. pl., *children* (free-born).
līberō, 1, *free; acquit.*
lībertās, tātis, f., *liberty.*
licet, impers., *it is permitted* (§ 138).
līgneus, a, um, *wooden.*
Lilybaeum, ī, n., *Lilybaeum*, a promontory of Sicily.
litterae, ārum, f. pl., *a letter.*
litterārius, a, um, *of* or *belonging to reading and writing.*
līttus, oris, n., *shore.*
locus, ī, m., *place; family;* pl., **loca, ōrum**, n.
longē, adv., *far.*
longitūdō, inis, f., *length.*
longus, a, um, *long.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak.*
Lūcius, ī (iī), m., *Lucius*, a man's name.
Lucrētia, ae, f., *Lucretia*, a woman's name.
Lucrētius, ī (iī), m., *Lucretius*, a man's name.
lūdus, ī, m., *game, school;* pl., **lūdi, ōrum**, m., (*public*) *games.*
lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *mourn.*
lūmen, inis, n., *light.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
lupa, ae, f., *she-wolf.*
lupus, ī, m., *wolf.*
lūstrō, 1, *review* (an army).
Lutātius, ī (iī), m., *Lutatius*, a man's name.
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*
Lysander, drī, m., *Lysander*, a Spartan commander.

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus, ī**, m., *Marcus*, a man's name.
magis, *more*, *rather*, comp. of **māgnopere**.
magister, trī, m., *master;* **magister equitum**, *master of the horse.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
māgnificentia, ae, f., *splendor.*
māgnitūdō, inis, f., *size.*
māgnopere, *greatly*, *earnestly* (§ 77, 1).
māgnus, a, um, *large*, *great.*
mājor, *larger*, *greater*, comp. of **māgnus**; **mājor nātū**, *elder* (lit. *greater as to birth*).
mājōrēs, um, m. (sc. **nātū**), *ancestors.*
male, adv., *badly*, *ill* (§ 77, 1).
maledīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *rail at.*
maleficus, ī, m., *evil doer.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer* (§ 130).
malus, a, um, *bad.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command*, *order.*
mandō, 1, *intrust*, *assign.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
Mānlius, ī (iī), m., *Manlius*, a man's name.
Mantinēa, ae, f., *Mantinea*, a city in Arcadia.
manus, ūs, f., *hand;* in military sense, *band*, *force.*
Mārcellus, ī, m., *Marcellus*, a man's name.
Mārcius, ī (iī), m., *Marcius*, a man's name.
mare, is, n., *sea.*
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea*, *maritime.*
marītus, ī, m., *husband.*
Mārs, Mārtis, m., the god *Mars.*
māssa, ae, f., *mass.*
Massilia, ae, f., *Marseilles.*
māter, tris, f., *mother.*
mātrimōnium, ī (iī), n., *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dare**, *to give in marriage* (of the father); **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *to take in marriage* (of the husband).
mātrōna, ae, f., *matron.*
mātūrus, a, um, *ripe.*
māximē, *especially*, sup. of **māgnopere**.
māximus, a, um, *greatest*, superl. of **māgnus**.
medicus, ī, m., *physician.*
medius, a, um, *middle*, *the middle of.*
mehercule, *gracious! I tell you*, lit. (*so help*) *me Hercules!*
melior, ius, *better*, comp. of **bonus**.
membrum, ī, n., *member* (of the body).
meminī, isse, *remember* (§ 133).
memoria, ae, f., *memory*, *recollection.*
Menēnius, ī (iī), m., *Menenius*, a man's name.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*
mēnsa, ae, f., *table.*
mēnsis, is, m., *month.*
mercēs, ēdis, f., *price*, *reward.*
mercor, ārī, ātus sum, *purchase.*
mereō, ēre, meruī, meritus, *deserve.*
mereor, ērī, itus sum, *deserve.*

mergō, ere, mersī, mersus, *sink.*
Messalla, ae, m., *Messalla.*
metō, ere, messuī, messus, *reap, mow.*
Mettius Fufetius, Mettī (iī) Fufetī (iī), m., *Mettius Fufetius,* a man's name.
meus, a, um, *my.*
migrō, 1, *move, move away.*
mīles, itis, m., *soldier.*
mīliārium, ī (iī), n., *milestone.*
mīlitāris, e, *military.*
mīlitia, ae, f., *military service.*
mille, indecl.; pl., **mīllia, ium,** *thousand* (§ 80, 5).
minimē, *least* (§ 77, 1).
minimus, a, um, superl. of **parvus.**
minor, *less,* comp. of **parvus**; **minor nātū,** *younger.*
minus, adv., *less* (§ 77, 1).
mīror, ārī, ātus sum, *wonder, admire.*
miseret, ēre, uit (§ 138), *it excites pity* (§ 209).
misericordia, ae, f., *pity.*
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send; hurl.*
modo, *only; just, just now;* as conj., *provided that.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, way, kind.*
moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls* (of a city).
molliō, īre, īvī, ītus, *soften.*
moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, *advise, warn.*
monitus, ūs, m., *advice.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
mōnstrō, 1, *show.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, ī, m., *disease.*
morior, ī, mortuus sum, *die.*
moror, ārī, morātus sum, *tarry, delay.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
morsus, ūs, m., *bite.*
mortuus, a, um, *dead.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom;* pl., **mōrēs,** *character.*
Mosa, ae, f., the river *Meuse.*
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move; touch.*
mox, *presently; soon; afterward.*
Mūcius, ī (iī), m., *Mucius,* a man's name.
mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude.*
multō, *by much,* abl. of **multum.**
multus, a, um. *much;* pl., *many.*
mūniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *fortify.*
mūnītiō, ōnis, f., *fortification.*
mūnus, eris, n., *reward.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*
mūs, mūris, c., *mouse.*

nam, *for.*
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum, *procure.*
nārrō, 1, *tell.*
nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born.*
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, tribe.*
natō, 1, *swim.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
nātus, ī, m., *child, son.*
(nātus, ūs), m., only in the abl. sing., **nātū,** *as to birth* (in phrases expressing age).

nāvālis, e, *naval.*
nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat.*
nē, *not; lest; that . . . not; from* (after verbs of *hindering*); **nē . . . quidem,** *not even;* emphatic negative, emphasizing the expression placed between **nē** and **quidem.**
-ne, enclitic interrog. particle, asking for information.
nec (neque), *nor.*
necesse est, impers., *it is necessary.*
neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *neglect.*
negō, 1, *deny; say "no."*
negōtium, ī (iī), n., *business; trouble.*
nēmō, c., defective noun, *no one;* acc. **nēminem,** dat. **nēminī**; other cases lacking.
nepōs, ōtis, m., *grandson.*
Neptūnus, ī, m., the god *Neptune.*
neque (nec), *nor, and not.*
neuter, tra, trum, *neither* (§ 66).
nihil, indecl., *nothing;* as adv., *not at all.*
nihilō, abl., *by nothing;* **nihilōminus,** *none the less.*
nisi, *unless, except.*
nōbilis, e, *noble.*
nōbilitās, tātis, f., *nobility.*
noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *injure, harm.*
nocturnus, a, um, *at night.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling* (§ 130).
nōmen, inis, n., *name.*
nōminātim, *by name.*
nōn, *not;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*
nōnāgēsimus, a, um, *ninetieth.*
nōndum, *not yet.*
nōnne, interrog. particle, expecting answer "yes."
nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*
nōscō, ere, nōvī, *become acquainted with;* the perfect has present meaning: *I know.*
noster, tra, trum, *our.*
notābilis, e, *notable.*
novem, indecl., *nine.*
novus, a, um, *new.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūpta, *veil one's self* (for the bridegroom); *marry,* used only of the woman.
nūllus, a, um, *no* (§ 66).
num, interrog. particle expecting answer "no"; in indirect questions, *whether.*
Numa Pompilius, Numae Pompilī (iī), *Numa Pompilius,* second king of Rome.
numerus, ī, m., *number.*
Numitor, ōris, m., *Numitor,* grandfather of Romulus and Remus.
numquam, *never.*
nunc, *now.*
nuncupō, 1, *name, call.*
nūntiō, 1, *announce, report.*
nūntius, ī (iī), m., *messenger.*
nūtriō, īre, īvī, ītus, *nurse, take care of.*
nympha, ae, f., *nymph.*

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
obeō, **īre**, **iī**, **itus**, *meet;* also used for **mortem obīre** (lit., *meet death*), *die.*
oberrō, 1, *wander about.*
obligō, 1, *lay under obligation.*
oblīviscor, **ī**, **oblītus sum**, *forget.*
oboediō, **īre**, **īvī**, **ītum**, *obey.*
obruō, **ere**, **ruī**, **rutus**, *overwhelm.*
obsecrō, 1, *entreat.*
obses, **idis**, c., *hostage.*
obsideō, **ēre**, **sēdī**, **sessus**, *blockade, block, throng.*
obsidiō, **ōnis**, f., *siege.*
obstruō, **ere**, **ūxī**, **ūctus**, *obstruct, block.*
obtestor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *adjure.*
obtineō, **ēre**, **uī**, **tentus**, *occupy, hold, obtain, secure; prevail.*
occaecō, 1, *blind.*
occāsiō, **ōnis**, f., *occasion, opportunity.*
occīdō, **ere**, **occīdī**, **occīsus**, *kill.*
occupō, 1, *take possession of, seize; occupy.*
occurrō, **ere**, **currī**, **cursum**, *run to meet.*
octāvus, **a**, **um**, *eighth;* **octāvus decimus**, *eighteenth.*
octingentī, **ae**, **a**, *eight hundred.*
Octodūrus, **ī**, m., *Octodurus*, a city of the Veragri.
octōgintā, indecl., *eighty.*
oculus, **ī**, m., *eye.*
ōdī, **ōdisse**, *hate* (§ 133).
offerō, **ferre**, **obtulī**, **oblātus**, *offer;* **sē offerre**, *volunteer.*
officium, **ī** (**iī**), n., *duty.*
ōlim, *formerly.*
omnīnō, adv., *altogether;* with negatives, *at all.*
omnis, **e**, *all, every.*
onerārius, **a**, **um**, *burden-bearing;* **nāvēs onerāriae**, *transports.*
opera, **ae**, f., *assistance.*
opīniō, **ōnis**, f., *opinion, expectation.*
oportet, **ēre**, **oportuit**, *it behooves* (§ 138, II).
oppidum, **ī**, n., *town, walled town.*
opportūnus, **a**, **um**, *fit, opportune.*
opprimō, **ere**, **pressī**, **pressus**, *overwhelm.*
oppūgnō, 1, *attack, assault.*
(**ops**) **opis**, f. (nom. sing. is not used), *power, help;* in pl., *resources.*
optimē, sup. of **bene** (§ 77, 1).
optimus, **a**, **um**, sup. of **bonus** (§ 72).
optiō, **ōnis**, f., *choice.*
optō, 1, *desire.*
opus, indecl., n., *need;* **opus est**, *it is necessary.*
opus, **eris**, n., *work; fortification.*
ōra, **ae**, f., *coast.*
ōrāculum, **ī**, n., *oracle.*
ōrātiō, **ōnis**, f., *speech.*
ōrātor, **ōris**, m., *orator; envoy.*
orbis, **orbis**, m., *circle;* **orbis terrārum**, *the world.*
ōrdinō, 1, *institute.*
ōrdō, **inis**, m., *rank.*
Orgetorīx, **īgis**, m., *Orgetorix*, an Helvetian chief.
orior, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, *arise.*

ōrnō, 1, *adorn.*
ōrō, 1, *beseech.*
ortus, perf. participle of **orior.**
os, ossis, n., *bone.*
ostendō, ere, tendī, tentus, *show, explain.*
ostentum, ī, n., *prodigy, wonder.*
Ōstia, ae, f., *Ostia*, a Latin town at mouth of the Tiber.
ōstium, ī (iī), n., *mouth.*
ōtiōsus, a, um, *at ease, free.*
ovis, ovis, f., *sheep.*
ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*

P., abbreviation of **Pūblius.**
pābulum, ī, n., *forage, food* (of animals).
paene, *almost, nearly.*
paenitet, ēre, paenituit, impers., *it causes regret* (§ 138, II).
palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*
pandō, ere, pandī, passus, *unfold, open.*
Papīrius, ī (iī), m., *Papirius*, a man's name.
pār, gen. **paris**, *equal;* with dat., *a match for.*
parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *spare* (§ 187, II, *a*).
pariō, ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth; lay* (an egg).
parō, 1, *prepare, get ready, procure; win.*
pars, partis, f., *part; side.*
parum, indecl., *little, too little.*
parvus, a, um, *small.*
pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed;* deponent, **pāscor, pāscī, pāstus sum,** *graze.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet).
pāstor, ōris, m., *herdsman, shepherd.*
patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *open.*
pateō, ēre, uī, *lie open.*
pater, patris, m., *father.*
paternus, a, um, *paternal; of one's father.*
patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer; allow.*
patria, ae, f., *country, fatherland.*
patrimōnium, ī (iī), n., *inheritance, property.*
paucī, ae, a, *few;* used only in pl.
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
paulō, abl., *by a little.*
paulum, *a little.*
pāx, ācis, f., *peace.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier;* in pl., *infantry.*
peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*
pelliciō, ere, lexī, lectus, *allure, entice.*
pellis, is, f., *skin.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive; drive out, banish; rout, defeat.*
Peloponnēsus, ī, f., *Peloponnesus*, the southern part of Greece.
pendeō, ēre, *hang.*
per, prep. w. acc., *through, by means of, through the instrumentality of; on account of; during.*
percontor, ārī, ātus sum, *ask.*

percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus, *strike.*
perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose.*
perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *conduct.*
pereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *perish* (§ 132).
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *carry through, convey, endure.*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish.*
perfidia, ae, f., *treachery.*
perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*
perfugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee.*
pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus, *proceed.*
perīculum, ī, n., *danger.*
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *permit, grant, cede* (§ 187, II, *a*).
permūtātiō, ōnis, f., *exchange.*
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual.*
Persae, ārum, m. pl., *Persians.*
persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up.*
persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *persuade.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify.*
perturbō, 1, *confuse, agitate.*
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
petō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus, *seek, request; attack.*
philosophus, ī, m., *philosopher.*
Pīsō, ōnis, m., *Piso,* a man's name.
placeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *please.*
placidus, a, um, *peaceful.*
plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain.*
plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
plērīque, aeque, aque, *most.*
plūrēs, a, *more; several;* plural of **plūs** (§ 70).
plūrimus, a, um, sup. of **multus** (§ 72).
plūs, comp. of **multus** (§§ 70, 72).
poena, ae, f., *penalty, punishment.*
Poenus, a, um, *Carthaginian.*
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise.*
Pompējus, Pompēī, m., *Pompey,* a man's name.
Pompilius, ī (iī), m., *Pompilius,* a man's name.
pondus, eris, n., *weight.*
pōnō ere, posuī, positus, *put; place; establish;* **castra pōnere,** *pitch a camp.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
Pontius, ī (iī), m., *Pontius,* a man's name.
populus, ī, m., *people.*
porrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, *stretch out.*
Porsena, ae, m., *Porsena,* a king of Etruria.
porta, ae, f., *gate.*
portō, 1, *carry.*
portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*
poscō, ere, poposcī, *demand.*
possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*
possideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *possess.*
possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can* (§ 126).
post, adv., *afterward.*

post, prep. with acc., *after; behind.*
posteā, *afterward.*
posterus, a, um, *following* (§ 73, 2); **posterī, ōrum**, m., *descendants.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postrēmō, *finally.*
postrīdiē, adv., *on the next day.*
postulō, 1, *demand.*
Postumius, ī (iī), m., *Postumius*, a man's name.
potēns, entis, pres. participle of **possum**, used as adj., *powerful.*
potestās, ātis, f., *power.*
potior, īrī, ītus sum, *gain possession of.*
praecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *go ahead.*
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *enjoin.*
praecipitō, 1, *hurl down headlong.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty.*
praedō, ōnis, m., *robber.*
praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *choose, prefer* (§ 129).
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *put in charge, place in command* (§ 187, III).
praemium, ī (iī), n., *reward.*
Praeneste, is, n., *Praeneste*, a Latin town.
praesaepe, is, n., *manger.*
praesēns, praesentis, *present*, pres. participle of **praesum**, used as adj.
praesidium, ī (iī), n., *garrison.*
praestāns, gen., **stantis**, *eminent, excellent.*
praestantia, ae, f., *preēminence.*
praestō, āre, itī, itus, *perform, show.*
praesum, esse, fuī, *be in charge of* (§ 125).
praeter, prep. w. acc., *except, besides.*
praetereā, *besides.*
praetereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *pass by.*
praetor, ōris, m., *praetor.*
prātum, ī, n., *meadow.*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus, *press, crowd.*
pretium, ī (iī), n., *price.*
(**prex, precis**), f., *prayer* (nom. and gen. sing. not used).
prīmō, *first, firstly.*
prīmum, *first, for the first time.*
prīmus, a, um, *first;* superl. of comp. **prior** (§ 73, 1).
prīnceps, ipis, m., *chief.*
prior, us, *former, before* (another).
Prīscus, ī, m., *Priscus*, a man's name.
prīstinus, a, um, *former, pristine.*
priusquam, *before.*
prīvātus, a, um, *private;* as noun, **prīvātus, ī**, m., *a private citizen.*
prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; for, instead of.*
probō, 1, *approve.*
Procās, ae, m., *Procas*, a king of Alba (§ 22).
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *advance.*
procul, *far.*

prōcūrō, 1, *care for, have charge of.*
prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run forward.*
prōditor, ōris, m., *traitor.*
proelium, ī (iī), n., *battle.*
prōferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *carry in front.*
proficīscor, ī, profectus sum, *set out.*
profugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape; flee for refuge.*
prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, *advance, go forward.*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *keep away, keep off.*
prōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *throw forward; cast.*
prōmissus, a, um, *flowing.*
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *promise.*
prōmunturium, ī (iī), n., *promontory.*
prōpāgō, 1, *propagate, continue.*
properō, 1, *hasten.*
propior, *nearer;* comp. of **prope** (§ 73).
prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *propose.*
propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
prōspectō, 1, *look out upon.*
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, **prōfutūrus**, *benefit* (§ 125).
prōtinus, *forthwith, straightway.*
prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *provide, take care.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
prōvocātiō, ōnis, f., *challenge.*
prōvocō, 1, *challenge.*
proximus, a, um, *nearest, next* (§ 73, 1).
prūdēns, *wise, sensible.*
Pūblicola, ae, m., *Publicola*, a man's name.
pūblicus, a, um, *public.*
Pūblius, ī (iī), m., *Publius*, a man's name.
puer, ī, m., *boy.*
puerīlis, e, *youthful.*
pueritia, ae, f., *boyhood.*
pūgna, ae, f., *battle.*
pūgnō, 1, *fight.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful, glorious.*
pullus, ī, m., *nestling.*
pulsus, perf. pass. participle of **pellō**.
Pulvillus, ī, m., *Pulvillus*, a man's name.
Pūnicus, a, um, *Punic.*
pūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *punish.*
pūpillus, ī, m., *ward.*
pusillus, a, um, *weak.*
putō, 1, *think.*
Pyrrhus, ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus.

quā, adv., *where.*
quadrāgēsimus, a, um, *fortieth.*
quadrāgintā, indecl., *forty.*
quadringentēsimus, a, um, *four hundredth.*
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *inquire; seek.*
quālis, e, rel., *as; such as;* interrog., *of what sort?*
1. **quam**, *how?*
2. **quam**, *than.*
quamquam, *although.*
quamvīs, *though, although.*

quandō, interrog., *when?*
quantum, *how much?*
quantus, a, um, *how great.*
quārē, rel. and interrog., *wherefore.*
quārtus, a, um, *fourth.*
quasi, *as if.*
quatiō, ere, quassus, *shake, move.*
quattuor, indecl., *four.*
quattuordecim, indecl., *fourteen.*
-que, enclitic conj., *and.*
querēla, ae, f., *complaint.*
queror, ī, questus sum, *complain.*
quī, *how?*
quī, quae, quod, *who, which.*
quia, conj., *because.*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever* (§ 91, 8).
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam**, *a certain* (§ 91).
quidem, *indeed, even; of course;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even.*
quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or **quodlibet**, *any you please* (§ 91, 1).
Quīnctius ī (iī), m., *Quinctius*, a man's name.
quīngentī, ae, a, *five hundred.*
quīnquāgintā, indecl., *fifty.*
quīnque, indecl., *five.*
quīntus, a, um, *fifth.*
Quīntus, ī, m., *Quintus*, a man's name.
quis, quid, interr. pron., *who, what?*
quis, qua (quae), quid, indef. pron., *any* (§ 91, 2).
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), *any, any one* (§ 91, 1).
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quicque), *each* (§ 91, 1).
1. **quō**, rel. and interrog. adv., *whither.*
2. **quō**, conj., *in order that.*
quod, *because*, on the ground that.
quōminus, *from* (after verbs of *hindering*).
quondam, *formerly; once.*
quoniam, conj., *inasmuch as.*
quoque, *also;* always placed after the word it modifies.

rāna, ae, f., *frog.*
rapiō, ere, uī, tus, *seize.*
raptor, ōris, m., *one who seizes.*
ratiō, ōnis, f., *reason.*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *retire.*
recēns, gen. **recentis**, *recent.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *take back, receive;* with reflexive **sē**, *to retreat.*
recūsō, 1, *refuse.*
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *return, give back; render, make.*
redeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *return, go back* (§ 132).
redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *reduce.*
redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *ransom.*
redintegrō, 1., *renew.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back.*
referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, tr., *bring back, return* (§ 129).

reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *rebuild.*
refluō, ere, *flow back.*
regiō, ōnis, f., *region.*
rēgius, a, um, *of the king; regal.*
rēgnō, 1, *reign.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *regal power, kingdom.*
regredior, ī, gressus sum, *march back, return.*
Rēgulus, ī, m., *Regulus,* a man's name.
rēiciō, ere, rejēcī, jectus, *hurl back.*
relātus, perf. pass. participle of **referō.**
relīctus, perf. pass. participle of **relinquō.**
religiō, ōnis, f., *religion.*
relinquō, ere, līquī, līctus, *leave, leave behind.*
reliquus, qua, quum, *remaining.*
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
rēmex, igis, m., *rower.*
removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *remove.*
Remus, ī, m., *Remus,* brother of Romulus.
renovō, 1, *renew.*
renūntiō, 1, *bring back word.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel.*
repente, *suddenly.*
repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *discover, find.*
repudiō, 1, *reject with scorn.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing, affair, circumstance.*
rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus, *tear down.*
resistō, ere, restitī, *resist* (§ 187, II, *a*).
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *look behind.*
respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus, *answer, reply.*
rēs pūblica, gen. **reī pūblicae,** f., *state, republic.*
respuō, ere, uī, *reject.*
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore.*
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *retain.*
reverentia, ae, f., *reverence.*
revertor, ī, ī, *return* (§ 114, 3).
revocō, 1, *call back.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
Rhea Silvia, gen. **Rheae Silviae,** f., *Rhea Silvia,* mother of Romulus and Remus.
Rhēnus, ī, m., *Rhine.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *Rhone.*
rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh, laugh at.*
rīpa, ae, f., *bank.*
rīvus, ī, m., *stream.*
rixor, ārī, ātus sum, *quarrel, wrangle.*
rōbur, oris, n., *strength.*
rogō, 1, *ask.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;* as noun, *a Roman.*
Rōmulus, ī, m., *Romulus.*
Rulliānus, ī, m., *Rullianus.*
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, *break, break down; burst.*
ruō, ere, ruī, ruitūrus, *rush.*
rūrsus, *again.*
rūsticus, ī, m., *farmer.*

Sabīnus, a, um, *Sabine.*
Sabīnus, ī, m., *Sabinus,* a lieutenant of Caesar.
sacer, cra, crum, *sacred;* in pl., **sacra,** n., *sacred rites.*
sacerdōs, ōtis, c., *priest; priestess.*
saepe, *often.*
saliō, īre, uī, *leap.*
salūs, lūtis, f., *safety.*
salūtō, 1, *salute, hail.*
salvus, a, um, *safe.*
Samnīs, ītis, m., *a Samnite.*
Sardinia, ae, f., *Sardinia.*
satelles, itis, m., *a body-guard.*
satis, adv., *enough.*
Sāturnia, ae, f., *Saturnia,* name of a citadel.
Sāturnus, ī, m., the god *Saturn.*
saxum, ī, n., *rock.*
Scaevola, ae, m., *Scaevola,* a man's name.
scelestus, a, um, *wicked.*
scelus, eris, n., *crime.*
scio, īre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*
scrība, ae, m., *secretary.*
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write;* of laws, *draw up.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
sē, reflexive, *he; himself, herself* (§ 85).
sēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *secede, withdraw.*
secundus, a, um, *second.*
sed, *but.*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *sit, perch.*
sēdēs, is, f., *seat.*
sēditiō, ōnis, f., *uprising, mutiny.*
seges, etis, f., *corn-field.*
semper, *always.*
senātor, tōris, m., *senator.*
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*
senex, senis, m., *old man;* as adj., *old.*
Senonēs, um, m., the *Senones,* a Gallic tribe.
sententia, ae, f., *opinion, sentiment.*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, perceive.*
sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), ultus, *bury.*
septem, indecl., *seven.*
septimus, a, um, *seventh.*
septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*
septuāgintā, indecl., *seventy.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *Sequani,* a Gallic tribe.
sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow; seek.*
sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation.*
serpō, ere, serpsī, *creep; spread abroad.*
Servius Tullius, Servī (iī) Tullī (iī), *Servius Tullius,* sixth king of Rome.
servō, 1, *save; protect; guard; preserve.*
servus, ī, m., *slave.*
sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*
sēta, ae, f., *hair.*
sex, indecl., *six.*
sexāgintā, indecl., *sixty.*
sextus, a, um, *sixth;* **sextus decimus,** *sixteenth.*
sī, *if.*
sīc, *so* (of manner).
siccus, a, um, *dry.*
Sicilia, ae, f., *Sicily.*

sīdus, eris, n., *constellation;* pl., *the stars.*
sīgnificō, 1, *show; mean.*
sīgnum, ī, n., *standard.*
silentium, ī (iī), n., *silence.*
silva, ae, f., *forest.*
Silvius, ī (iī), m., *Silvius.*
similis, e, *like.*
simul, *together, at the same time.*
simul ac (atque), *as soon as.*
sīn, *but if* (§ 306, 3).
sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*
singulāris, e, *single, matchless.*
singulī, ae, a, *one at a time, each.*
sinister, tra, trum, *left, left-hand.*
sitis, is, f., *thirst* (§ 38, 1).
socer, erī, m., *father-in-law.*
societās, tātis, f., *partnership.*
socius, (iī), m., *ally, comrade;* **sociī,** often, *the provincials.*
sōl, is, m., *sun.*
soleō, ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep., *be accustomed.*
sōlitūdō, dinis, f., *solitude.*
sōlum, *only;* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*
sōlus, a, um, *alone, only* (§ 66).
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose;* of ships, *unmoor;* **nāvēs solvere,** *set sail.*
somnus, ī, m., *sleep.*
sonitus, ūs, m., *sound.*
sonus, ī, m., *sound.*
spatiōsus, a, um, *roomy.*
spatium, ī (iī), n., *space; time, period.*
spectō, 1, *look on.*
spērō, 1, *hope, hope for;* governs the acc.
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*
spoliō, 1, *despoil.*
Spurius, ī (iī), m., *Spurius,* a man's name.
stāgnum, ī, n., *pool, lagoon.*
statim, *at once, immediately.*
statua, ae, f., *statue.*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide.*
statūra, ae, f., *stature, height.*
stilus, ī, m., *stilus; pen.*
stō, āre, stēti, stātūrus, *stand.*
strēnuus, a, um, *energetic.*
stultitia, ae, f., *folly.*
suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsūrus, *urge, advise.*
sub, prep. w. acc. and abl. (§ 143), *under.*
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *withdraw, lead away; snatch away.*
subeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *approach* (§ 132).
subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *subdue.*
subitō, *suddenly.*
sublevō, 1, *relieve.*
sublīmis, e, *high, lofty;* **in sublīme,** *on high.*
submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send, despatch.*
subrīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *smile.*
subsidium, ī (iī), n., *assistance.*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *follow, succeed.*
suī, *self, oneself* (§ 85, 1).
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be.*
summus, a, um, *highest, greatest, top of* (§ 241, 1); sup. of **superus** (§ 73, 2).

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take.*
super, prep. w. acc., *above.*
superbia, ae, f., *pride, haughtiness.*
superbus, a, um, *proud, haughty.*
superior, us, *higher, upper;* comp. of **superus** (§ 73, 2).
superō, 1, *overcome, defeat, surpass; be superior to.*
supersum, esse, fuī, *remain, be over, be left; survive* (§ 125).
superveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come up, arrive.*
supplicium, ī (iī), n., *torture, punishment.*
suprā, prep. w. acc., *above.*
suprēmus, a, um, superl. of **superus** (§ 73, 2).
suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *undertake, receive.*
suspīciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion.*
suspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *suspect.*
sustineō, ēre, uī, *withstand.*
sustulī, perf. ind. act. of **tollō.**
suus, a, um, *his; her; its; their.*
Syrācūsae, ārum, f., *Syracuse,* a city of Sicily.
Syrācūsānus, ī, m., *a Syracusan.*

T., abbreviation of **Titus.**
talentum, ī, n., *a talent* (about $1200).
tālis, e, *such.*
tam, *so* (of degree).
tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*
Tanaquil, ilis, f., *Tanaquil,* wife of Tarquinius Priscus.
tandem, *at length.*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.*
tantum (n. of **tantus**), *so much.*
tantus, a, um, *so great.*
tardō, 1, *retard, check.*
Tarentīnus, a, um, *Tarentine.*
Tarentum, ī, n., *Tarentum,* a city.
Tarpēia, ae, f., *Tarpeia,* a woman's name.
Tarpēius, a, um, *Tarpeian.*
Tarquiniī, ōrum, m. pl., *Tarquinii,* a city.
Tarquinius, ī (iī), m., *Tarquin,* a Roman king.
tēctum, ī, n., *roof.*
Telesīnus, ī, m., *Telesinus,* a man's name.
tēlum, ī, n., *javelin.*
temere, *rashly.*
tempestās, tātis, f., *tempest.*
templum, ī, n., *temple.*
temptō, 1, *attempt, make trial of.*
tempus, oris, n., *time.*
tendō, ere, tetendī, tentus, *stretch; stretch one's course, go.*
teneō, ēre, uī, *hold.*
tergum, ī, n., *back;* **ā tergō,** *from behind.*
terra, ae, f., *land, a land.*
terreō, ēre, uī, itus, *frighten.*
territōrium, ī (iī), n., *territory.*
terror, ōris, m., *terror, fear.*
tertius, a, um, *third.*
testūdō, inis, f., *tortoise.*
Thēbae, ārum, f. pl., *Thebes.*

Thēbānus, a, um, *Theban*, subs. *a Theban.*
Themistoclēs, is, m., *Themistocles*, an Athenian statesman.
Tiberis, is, m., *Tiber.*
timeō, ēre, uī, *fear.*
timidus, a, um, *timid.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*
tintinnābulum, ī, n., *bell.*
titulus, ī, m., *placard.*
Titus, ī, m., *Titus*, a man's name.
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise; take, take away* (§ 129).
tonitrus, ūs, m., *thunder.*
tonō, āre, tonuī, *thunder.*
Torquātus, ī, m., *Torquatus*, a man's name.
torquis, is, m., *necklace.*
tot, indecl., *so many.*
tōtus, a, um, *whole, entire* (§ 66).
trāctō, 1, *treat.*
trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus, *hand over;* **sē trādere,** *surrender.*
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead across.*
trāiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus (orig. transitive, *throw across, send across*), *cross over.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across.*
trānseō, īre, iī, itus, *cross; cross over.*
trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *transfer.*
trānsfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus, *pierce.*
trānsigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *pass, spend.*
trānsiliō, īre, uī, *leap over.*
trānsmarīnus, a, um, *across the sea, from across the sea.*
trānsnō, 1, *swim across.*
trānsportō, 1, *transport.*
trecentēsimus, a, um, *three hundredth.*
trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*
tredecim, indecl., *thirteen.*
trēs, tria, *three* (§ 80, 3).
Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., *Treveri*, a tribe of Belgians.
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune*, officer of a Roman legion; also a *tribune* of the plebs.
tribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *assign, award; grant.*
tribūtum, ī, n., *tax.*
trīcēsimus, a, um, *thirtieth.*
trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*
trigeminī, ōrum, m. pl., *triplets.*
trīgintā, indecl., *thirty.*
triumphō, 1, *celebrate a triumph.*
Trōja, ae, f., *Troy.*
Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan;* as subs., *a Trojan.*
trux, gen. **trucis,** *savage.*
tū, tuī, *thou, you* (§ 84).
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*
tubicen, inis, m., *trumpeter.*
tueor, ērī, *guard, watch.*
Tullia, ae, f., *Tullia*, a woman's name.
Tullus Hostīlius, Tullī Hostīlī (iī), m., *Tullus Hostilius*, third king of Rome.
tum, *then, at that time.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*
tunc, *then.*
turbō, 1, *disturb.*

turbulentus, a, um, *disturbed, muddy.*
turpis, e, *base.*
turris, is, f., *tower* (§ 38).
Tusculum, ī, n., *Tusculum,* a town in Latium.
tūtor, ōris, m., *guardian.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
tuus, a, um, *thy, your* (§ 86).
tyrannus, ī, m., *tyrant.*

ūber, eris, n., *udder.*
ubi, rel. and interr. adv., *where; when.*
Ubiī, ōrum, m., *Ubii,* a Gallic tribe.
ubique, *everywhere.*
ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, *avenge.*
ūllus, a, um, *any* (§ 66).
ulterior, us, *farther, more distant* (§ 73, 1).
ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond.*
umquam, *ever.*
ūnā, *together.*
unde, *whence.*
ūndēquīnquāgintā, indecl., *forty-nine.*
undique, *from all parts.*
unguentum, ī, n., *perfume.*
unguis, is, m., *talon.*
ungula, ae, f., *talon.*
ūnus, a, um, *one, alone* (§ 66).
urbānitās, ātis, *wit.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
Usipetēs, um, m., *Usipetes,* a German tribe.
ūsque, *even.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service.*
ut, *that, in order that;* with verbs of fearing, *that not;* denoting time, *as, when.*
uter, tra, trum, interrog. pron., *which (of two)?*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. **utrīusque** (cf. § 66), *each* (of two); in pl., *both* (of two parties).
ūtilis, e, *advantageous.*
utinam, affirmative particle.
ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use* (§ 218, 1).
utrum, *whether.*
ūva, ae, f., *bunch of grapes.*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*

vadum, ī, n., *ford.*
vāgītus, ūs, m., *crying.*
valeō, ēre, uī, valitūrus, *avail, prevail.*
Valerius, ī (iī), m., *Valerius,* a man's name.
validius, *more vigorously,* comp. of **valdē.**
vallis, vallis, f., *valley.*
vāllum, ī, n., *intrenchment.*
vāstō, 1, *lay waste.*
Vatīnius, ī (iī), *Vatinius.*
Vējentānus, a, um, *Veientine.*
Vējentēs, ium, m., *Veientines* (inhabitants of Veii).
vēndō, ere, didī, ditus, *sell.*
venēnum, ī, n., *poison.*
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., *Veneti,* a Gallic tribe.
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*
venter, tris, m., *stomach.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*
vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*
Veragrī, ōrum, m., pl., *the Veragri,* a Gallic tribe.
verber, eris, n., *blow.*
verberō, 1, *beat, strike.*
verbum, ī, n., *word.*

vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear.*
vērō, *indeed; but.*
versor, ārī, ātus sum, *be engaged in.*
vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn;* **terga vertere**, *flee.*
vescor, ī, *feed upon.*
Vesta, ae, f., the goddess *Vesta.*
Vestālis, is, adj., *Vestal.*
vester, vestra, vestrum, *your.*
Veturia, ae, f., *Veturia*, a woman's name.
Veturius, ī (iī), m., *Veturius*, a man's name.
vetus, gen. veteris, *old, long-standing.*
vexō, 1, *harass, annoy; ravage.*
via, ae, f., *way, road.*
vīcēsimus, a, um, *twentieth.*
victor, ōris, m., *victor.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see;* in pass., *be seen; seem, appear.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (of the night).
vīgintī, indecl., *twenty.*
vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind, tie.*
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer.*
vinculum, ī, n., *chain.*
vindex, icis, m., *champion.*
vindicō, 1, *claim.*
vīnea, ae, f., *vineyard, trellis.*
vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*
vir, ī, m., *man.*
vīrēs, pl. of vīs (§ 41).
virga, ae, f., *rod, switch.*
Virginia, ae, f., *Virginia*, a woman's name.
Virginius, ī (iī), m., *Virginius*, a man's name.
virgō, inis, f., *virgin, maiden.*
virgula, ae, f., *rod.*
virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor, virtue.*
vīs, vis, f. (acc. vim), *violence; number;* **vim facere**, *do violence, violate;* pl. **vīrēs**, ium, *strength* (§ 41).
vīsus, perf. pass. participle of **videō**.
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
vītō, 1, *avoid.*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctūrus, *live.*
vix, *scarcely, with difficulty.*
vocō, 1, *call, summon; name.*
volō, 1, *fly.*
volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing* (§ 130).
Volscī, ōrum, m. pl., *Volsci*, a Latin tribe.
volucer, cris, cre, *flying, capable of flight.*
Volumnia, ae, f., *Volumnia*, a woman's name.
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word, exclamation.*
vulnerō, 1, *wound.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*
vulpēs, is, f., *fox.*
vultus, ūs, m., *countenance; look.*

Xanthippus, ī, m., *Xanthippus*, a man's name.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

abandon, dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus.
(able), be able, possum, posse, potuī.
absent, be absent, absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
accomplish, perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
(account), on account of, propter, *prep. w. acc.*
accuse, accūsō, 1.
across, trāns. *prep. with acc.*
adjudge, jūdicō, 1.
administer, administrō, 1.
advance, prōgredior, ī, gressus sum.
adversary, adversārius, iī, *m.*
adverse, adversus, a, um.
advice, cōnsilium, ī (iī), *n.*
affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
after (*adv.*), post.
after (*conj.*), postquam.
after, post, *prep. w. acc.*
afterward, posteā.
against, contrā, *prep. w. acc.*
aid, auxilium, ī (iī), *n.*
all, omnis, e.
ally, socius, iī, *m.*
almost, paene.
already, jam.
although, though, quamquam; quamvīs; cum.
always, semper.
ambush, īnsidiae, ārum, *f.*
among, inter, *prep. w. acc.*
ample, amplus, a, um.
ancestors, mājōrēs, um, *m.*
and, et; -que (*enclitic*); atque.
announce, nūntiō, 1.
another, alius, a, ud.
answer, respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum.
any, ūllus, a, um (§ 66).
anybody, any one, anything, quisquam, quaequam, quidquam; quis, quid.
any you please, quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet *or* quodlibet (§ 91, 1).
appear, videor, ērī, vīsus sum.
appoint, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus; *lit.*, **say.**
approach, aditus, ūs, *m.*
approach (*verb*), appropinquō, 1; adeō, īre, iī, itus.
approve, probō, 1.
April, of April, Aprīlis, e.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, *m.*
arm, armō, 1.
arms, arma, ōrum, *n.*

army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*
army on the march, agmen, minis, *n.*
arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*
arrive, adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
as long as, dum.
as soon as, simul atque (ac).
ask, rogō, 1.
assault, oppūgnō, 1.
assemble (*intrans.*), conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
assistance, subsidium, I (iī), *n.*; auxilium, I (iī), *n.*
(at hand), **be at hand**, adsum, esse, adfuī, adfutūrus.
at night, nocturnus, a, um.
at once, statim.
Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f.*
attack, **assault** (*a town*), oppūgnō, 1.
attack, adorior, īrī, ortus sum.
attempt, temptō, 1; cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.
authority, auctōritās, ātis, *f.*
avert, āvertō, ere, vertī, versus.
avoid, vītō, 1.
await, exspectō, 1.

bad, malus, a, um.
banish, expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.
barbarian (*adj.*), barbarus, a, um; (*noun*), barbarus, I, *m.*
base, turpis, e.
battle, proelium, I (iī), *n.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī (§ 126).
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
beast of burden, jūmentum, I, *n.*
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum.
because, quod; quia; cum (§ 286).
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
before (*prep. and adv.*), ante.
before, antequam, priusquam.
begin, coepī, coepisse (§ 133), incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
beginning, initium, I (iī), *n.*
behind, post, *prep. w. acc.*
behoove, **it behooves**, oportet, ēre, oportuit (§ 138, II).
Belgians, Belgae, ārum, *m.*
believe, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
beseech, ōrō, 1.
betake oneself, cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *with the reflexive pron.*
better, melius.
between, inter., *prep. w. acc.*
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
blockade (*verb*), obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus.
boat, nāvis, is, *f.*
bold, audāx, ācis.
booty, praeda, ae, *f.*
born, **be born**, nāscor, I, nātus sum.
born, nātus, a, um.
both, **each**, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
boundary, fīnis, is, *m.*
boy, puer, erī, *m.*
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter; *from the adj.*, fortis, e.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
brief, brevis, e.

bring, afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus.
bring about, efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
bring against, īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *with dat. of indirect obj.* (§ 187, III).
bring back, referō, ferre, rettulī, lātus.
bring together, cōnferō, ferre, contulī, collātus.
Britain, Britannia, ae, *f.*
brother, frāter, tris, *m.*
building, aedificium, ī (iī), *n.*
by (*of personal agent*), ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*

Caesar, Caesar, is, *m.*
calamity, calamitās, ātus, *f.*
call (*name*), appellō, 1.
call (*summon*), vocō, 1.
call together, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n.*
can (*be able*), possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, ī, *m.*
capture, expūgnō, 1; capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
Cato, Catō, ōnis, *m.*
cause, causa, ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitēs, um, *m. pl. of* eques, itis; **of cavalry, equestrian**, equester, tris, tre.
cease, dēsistō, ere, dēstitī.
certain, certain one, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* quoddam (§ 91).
certainly (*in answers*), sānē.
change (*noun*), commūtātiō, *f.*
charge, be in charge, praesum, esse, fuī, *construed with dat.* (§ 187, II, *a*).
charge, put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *construed with dat.* (§ 187, III).
check, tardō, 1.
chief, prīnceps, ipis, *m.*
children, līberī, ōrum, *m.*
choose, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.
circumstance, rēs, eī, *f.*
citizen, fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, *c.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
coast, ōra, ae, *f.*
cohort, cohors, rtis, *f.*
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
come together, conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
command (*noun*), mandātum, ī, *n.*
command (*verb*), imperō, 1.
commander, imperātor, ōris, *m.*
common, commūnis, e.
compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
complain, queror, ī, questus sum.
concern, it concerns, interest, esse, fuit.
concerning, dē, *prep. w. abl.*
condition, condiciō, ōnis, *f.*
confer, colloquor, ī, locūtus sum.
conference, colloquium, ī (iī), *n.*
confidence, fīdūcia, ae, *f.*
conquer, vincō, ere, vīcī, victus.
consider, arbitror, ārī, ātus sum.
consul, cōnsul, is, *m.*
consult (**with**), dēlīberō, 1.
consume, cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus.
contend, dīmicō, 1.

contented, contentus, a, um.
controversy, contrōversia, ae, *f.*
conversation, sermō, ōnis, *m.*
council, concilium, ī (iī), *n.*
country, native country, patria, ae, *f.*
courageous, audāx, ācis.
courageously, audācter, *from adj.* audāx, ācis.
cowardly, ignāvus, a, um.
Crassus, Crassus, ī, *m.*
crime, scelus, eris, *n.*
cross, trānseō, īre, iī, itūrus.
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*

danger, perīculum, ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.*
Darius, Dārīus, iī, *m.*
daughter, fīlia, ae, *f.*
day, diēs, ēī, *m.*
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
decide, cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
decree, dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus.
deep, altus, a, um.
defeat, superō, 1.
defend, dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus.
delay, mora, ae, *f.*
deliberate, dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
demand, imperō, 1; flāgitō, 1.
depart, abeō, īre, iī, itūrus.
depth, altitūdō, inis, *f.*
deserter, perfuga, ae, *m.*
deserve, mereor, ērī, meritus sum.
desire, wish, optō, 1.
despise, dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus.
determine, cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
difficult, difficilis, e.
dignity, dignitās, ātis, *f.*
diligence, dīligentia, ae, *f.*
disaster, clādēs, is, *f.*
discipline, disciplīna, ae. *f.*
discover, reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
dismiss, dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
dissension, dissēnsiō, ōnis, *f.*
distant, be distant, absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
ditch, fossa, ae, *f.*
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
Domitius, Domītius, ī, (iī), *m.*
doubt, be in doubt, dubitō, 1.
draw up, īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus.
drive back, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus.
drive out, expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.
duty, officium, ī (iī), *n.*

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.
each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
each other, suī, sibi, sē; *also* nōs, vōs *used reflexively* (§ 244, 5).
eager, alacer, alacris, alacre.
easily, facile, *from adj.* facilis, e.
easy, facilis, e.
eighty, octōgintā.
else, alius, a, ud.

embankment, rampart, agger, eris, *m.*
encourage, cōnfīrmō, 1.
endeavor, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *dep.*
end of, extrēmus, a, um (§ 241, 1).
endure, perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
enemy (*in military sense*), hostis, is, *c.*; (*collectively*), hostēs, ium, *m.*
enemy (*personal*), inimīcus, ī, *m.*
enjoy, fruor, ī (§ 218, 1).
enough, satis (§ 201, 2).
enter, enter upon, ineō, īre, iī, itūrus.
entreat, obsecrō, 1.
envoy, lēgātus, ī, *m.*
escape, effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
especially, māximē (§ 77, 1).
establish, cōnfīrmō, 1.
even, etiam.
not even, nē . . . quidem, *with the emphatic word or phrase between.*
ever, always, semper.
ever (at any time), umquam.
(evident) it is evident, cōnstat (§ 138).
exhaust, wear out, cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
expect, exspectō, 1.
explore, explōrō, 1.

fail, dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī.
family (stock), genus, eris, *n.*
far (*adv.*), longē.
farmer, agricola, ae, *m.*
farther (*adj.*), ulterior, us (§ 73, 1).
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fatherland, patria, ae, *f.*
favor, beneficium, ī (iī), *n.*
fear (*noun*), timor, ōris, *m.*
fear (*verb*), timeō, ēre, uī.
fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, *c.*
fertile, ferās, ācis.
few, paucī, ae, a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter; *from the adj.*, ācer, ācris, ācre.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fight, pūgnō, 1.
fill, fill up, compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.
find, find out (*by searching*), reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
find (*come upon*), inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.
first, *adj.*, prīmus, a, um.
first, *adv.*, prīmum.
fit out, equip, īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus.
five, quīnque.
flee, flee from, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
flee for refuge, cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fleet, classis, is, *f.*
(following), on the following day, postrīdiē.
follow up, cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum.
fond, fond of, cupidus, a, um.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
for (in behalf of), prō, *prep. w. abl.*
forage, pābulum, ī, *n.*

force (*verb*), cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiæ, ārum, *f.*
ford, vadum, ī, *n.*
forest, silva, ae, *f.*
forget, oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum.
form (a plan), ineō, īre, iniī, initus.
fort, castellum, ī, *n.*
fortify, mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus.
fortunate, fēlīx, īcis.
fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.*
fortune (*in sense of property*), fortūnae, ārum, *f.*
four, quattuor.
free (*adj.*), līber, a, um.
free, set free, līberō, 1.
frequent, crēber, bra, brum.
friend, amīcus, ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, ae, *f.*
frighten, perterreō, ēre, uī, itus.
from, ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*
from, out of, ē, ex, *prep. w. abl.*
from (= **of**), *with verbs of demanding, etc.*, ā, ab.
from, *after verbs of hindering, etc.*, quōminus, nē.
from all sides, undique.
front (*adj.*), prīmus, a, um.

Galba, Galba, ae, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, ī (iī), *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
Gaul (*a Gaul*), Gallus, ī, *m.*
Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, ae, *f.*
Geneva, Genēva, ae, *f.*
German, Germānus, a, um; Germānus, ī, *m.*
Germany, Germānia, ae, *f.*
get ready (*trans.*), parō, 1.
gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
go, eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum (§ 132).
go around, circumeō, īre, īvī (iī), itus (§ 132).
go away, abeō, īre, iī, itūrus.
God, deus, ī, *m.*
good, bonus, a, um.
go out, exeō, īre, exiī, exitūrus.
grain, frūmentum, ī, *n.*
great, māgnus, a, um (§ 72).
greatest (*of qualities*), summus, a, um.
greatly, māgnopere.
grief, dolor, ōris, *m.*
(ground), on the ground that, quod.
guard, watch, servō, 1; tueor, ērī.

Haedui, Haeduī, ōrum, *m.*
happen, be done, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
happen, it happens, it befalls, *impersonal*, accidit, ere, accidit.
happy, fēlīx, īcis.
harass, vexō, āre, āvī, ātus,
harbor, portus, ūs, *m.*
harm, dētrīmentum, ī, *n.*
hasten, contendō, ere, endī, entum.
hate, ōdī, ōdisse (§ 133).
have, habeō, ēre, uī, itus.
he, is (ea, id) (§ 87).
hear, audiō, īre, īvī, ītus.
heart, courage, animus, ī, *m.*
help, auxilium, ī (iī), *n.*
Helvetii, Helvētiī, ōrum, *m.*

her, suus, a, um (§ 86, 1), *reflexive*.
here, hīc.
high, altus, a, um.
highest (*of qualities*), summus, a, um.
hill, collis, is, *m*.
himself, herself, *etc.*, suī, sibi, sē, *reflexive*.
hinder, impede, impediō, īre, īvī, ītus.
his, suus, a, um, *reflexive*.
home, domus, ūs (§ 49, 4); **at home**, domī (§ 232, 2).
home (to one's home), domum (§ 182, 1, *b*).
honor, honor, ōris, *m*.
hope, spēs, eī, *f*.
horse, equus, ī, *m*.
horseman, eques, itis, *m*.
hostage, obses, idis, *c*.
hostile, inimīcus, a, um.
house, domus, ūs, *f*.
how many, quot, *indecl*.
how much, *followed by gen. of the whole* (§ 201, 2), quantum.
hundred, centum.
hurry, contendō, ere, tendī, tentum.

I, ego, meī.
if, sī, *conj*.
immediately, statim.
in, in, *prep. w. abl.*
inasmuch as, quoniam (§ 286, 1).
increase (*trans.*), augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.
infantry, peditēs, um, *m*.
influence, auctōritās, ātis, *f*.
inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
be informed, certior fīō, fierī, factus sum.
inhabit, incolō, ere, coluī, cultus.
inhabitant, incola, ae, *m*.
injure, noceō, ere, uī, itūrus, *with the dat.* (§ 187, II, *a*).
into, in, *prep. w. acc.*
island, īnsula, ae, *f*.
Italy, Italia, ae, *f*.

javelin, tēlum, ī, *n*.
join (battle), committō, ere, mīsī, missus.
journey, iter, itineris, *n*.
joyful, laetus, a, um.

Kalends, Kalendae, ārum, *f*.
keep off, away, ward off, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
kill, interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
kind, modus, ī, *m*.
kindness, beneficium, ī (iī), *n*.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m*.
know, sciō, īre, īvī, ītus.

labor, labor, ōris, *m*.
lack, be lacking, dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī (§ 125).
land, ager, agrī, *m*.
land (*as opposed to the water*), terra, ae, *f*.
large, māgnus, a, um (§ 72).
last, last part of, *limiting a noun*, extrēmus, a, um (§ 241, 1).
last (*of time*), ultimus (§ 73, 1).
law, statute, lēx, lēgis, *f*.
lay waste, vāstō, 1.
lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.

lead, lead out, lead away, dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead across, trādūco, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead back, redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *c.*
lead forth, ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
leave, leave behind, relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus.
legion, legiō, onis, *f.*
lend (*help*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
Lentulus, Lentulus, ī, *m.*
less, minus.
lest, nē.
let go, dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
letter (*an epistle*), litterae, ārum, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, ātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m.*
life, vīta, ae, *f.*
light, levis, e; **light-armed,** expedītus, a, um.
like, similis, e.
line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f.*
little, parvus, a, um.
little (*a little*), paulum.
long (*adj.*), longus, a, um.
long (*adv.*), diū.
lose, āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
loyalty, fidēs, eī, *f.*
Lucretia, Lucrētia, ae, *f.*

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
make (*somebody or something safe, bold, clear, etc.*), reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
man, homō, inis, *c.*, *the general term; man as opposed to woman, or as a complimentary designation,* vir, virī, *m.*
manners, mōrēs, um, *m.*
many, multī, ae, a; **very many,** complūrēs, a; *gen.*, complūrium.
march (*noun*), iter, itineris, *n.*
march (*verb*), iter facere, *lit.*, *make a march.*
march forth, out, ēgredior, ī, gressus sum.
Marcus, Mārcus, ī, *m.*
maritime, maritimus, a, um.
Marseilles, Massilia, ae, *f.*
matchless, singulāris, e.
meanwhile, intereā.
memory, memoria, ae, *f.*
messenger, nūntius, ī (iī), *m.*
middle (of), medius, a, um (§ 241, 1).
mile, mīlle passūs, *lit.*, *thousand paces; pl.*, mīllia passuum.
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
money, pecūnia, ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, is, *m.*
more (*adv.*), magis.
more (*substantive*), plūs, plūris, *n.*
most, plērīque, aeque, aque.
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
much, multus, a, um.
multitude, multitūdō, inis, *f.*
my, meus, a, um.

name, nōmen, inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, a, um.
narrow pass, angustiae, ārum, *f.*

naval, nāvālis, e.
nearest, proximus, a, um (§ 73, 1).
necessary, it is necessary, necesse est.
necessary (there is need), opus (est).
need, there is need, opus est (§ 218, 2).
neglect, nĕglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus.
neighboring, fīnitimus, a, um.
never, numquam.
next, proximus, a, um (§ 73, 1; 192, 1).
no, nūllus, a, um; *in answers, see* § 162, 5, *b*.
no one, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem; *gen.* and *abl.*, wanting.
noble, nōbilis, e.
not, nōn; nē.
(not), is not? does not? *etc.*, nōnne (§ 162, 2).
not even, nē . . . quidem, *with the emphatic word between.*
notice, animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus.
not yet, nōndum.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
now (*at the present time*), nunc.
number, numerus, ī, *m.*

obstruct, obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus.
occur, fīō, ĭerī, factus sum.
of, concerning, dē, *prep. w. abl.*
often, saepe.
old, vetus, eris.
on, in, *prep. w. abl.*
on all sides, undique, *adv.*
one, ūnus, a, um.
one . . . another, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter.
onset, impetus, ūs, *m.*
opinion, opīniō, ōnis, *f.*
opportune, opportūnus, a, um.
opportunity, occāsiō, ōnis, *f.*
order, demand, imperō, 1.
order, command, jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussus.
Orgetorix, Orgetorĭx, ĭgis, *m.*
other, another, alius, a, ud.
other, the other, alter, a, um.
others, all the others, cēterī, ae, a.
ought, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus; **it behooves**, oportet, ēre, oportuit.
our, our own, noster, tra, trum.
overcome, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.
overwhelm, opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus.
owe, debeō, ēre, uī, itus.

pace (= *5 feet*), passus, ūs, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass (a pass), angustiae, ārum, *f.*
pass the winter, hiemō, 1.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, ī, *m.*
perish, intereō, īre, iī, itūrus (§ 132).
permit, permittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
(permitted), it is permitted, licet, ēre, licuit, *imp.*
persuade, persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum (§ 187, II, *a*).

pity, misericordia, ae, *f.*
pity, it excites pity, miseret, miserēre, miseruit, *impersonal.*
place (*noun*), locus, ī, *m.*
place (*verb*), collocō, 1.
place in charge, in command over, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *with the dat. of indirect obj.* (§ 187, III).
plain, plānitiēs, ēī, *f.*
plan, cōnsilium, ī, *n.*
please, placeō, ēre, uī, itūrus.
plots, īnsidiae, ārum, *f.*
plunder, dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus.
Pompey, Pompējus, Pompēī, *m.*
power, potestās, ātis, *f.; denotes the power that is vested in an official.*
powerful, potēns, entis.
praetor, praetor, ōris, *m.*
praise (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
praise (*verb*), laudō, 1.
precede, antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī (§ 130).
present, give, dōnō, 1.
present, be present, adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
press on, īnstō, āre, stitī.
prevail, valeō, ēre, valuī.
prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
prisoner, captīvus, ī, *m.*
pristine, prīstinus, a, um.
procure, parō, 1.
promise, polliceor, ērī, itus sum.
province, prōvincia, ae, *f.*
put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus (§ 187, III).
put to flight, fugō, āre, āvī, ātus.

quickly, celeriter, *adv., from the adj.*, celer, eris, ere.
quite, omnīnō.

rampart, agger, eris, *m.*
rashly, temere.
ravage, vexō, 1.
receive, accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
recent, recēns, entis.
recollection, memoria, ae, *f.*
reduce, redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
refuse, recūsō, 1.
region, regiō, ōnis, *f.*
regret, it causes regret, paenitet, ēre, uit, *impersonal* (§ 138).
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
remember, bear in mind, meminī, isse (§ 133).
remind, admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.
render, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus.
report (*noun*), fāma, ae, *f.*
report (*verb*), renūntiō, 1.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, fāma, ae, *f.*
request, seek, petō, ere, petīvī (iī), ītus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, *with dat.* (§ 187, II, *a*).

resolve, cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
rest, rest of, reliquus, a, um.
rest, the rest, cēterī, ae, a.
retain, retineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
retard, tardō, 1.
retreat, sē recipere (recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus).
return (*trans.*), reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
return (*intrans.*), revertor, ī; redeō, īre, iī, itum.
revolt, dēfectiō, ōnis, *f.*
reward, praemium, ī (iī), *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, *m.*
right, dexter, tra, trum.
river, flūmen, inis, *n.*
road, iter, itineris, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; **a Roman**, Rōmānus, ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*
run forward, prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum.

safety, salūs, ūtis, *f.*
sake, for the sake, causā, *with gen.; the gen. always precedes.*
sally, ēruptiō, ōnis, *f.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem (§ 87); **at same time**, simul.
save, servō, 1.
say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
scarcely, vix.
sea, mare, is, *n.*
secretly, clam.
see, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seem, videor, ērī, vīsus sum.
seize, occupō, 1.
self, oneself, suī, sibi, sē.
self (*i.e. I myself, you yourself, etc.*), ipse *in apposition with the subject or object.*
sell, vēndō, ere, vēndidī, vēnditus.
senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m.*
set free, līberō, 1.
set on fire, incendō, ere, endī, ēnsus.
set out, proficīscor, ī, fectus sum.
she, ea, *f. of* is (§ 87).
sharply, ācriter.
shield, scūtum, ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, is, *f.*
(sides) on all, undique.
shore, lītus, oris, *n.*
short, brevis, e.
show, praestō, āre, stitī.
since (*causal*), cum.
six, sex, *indecl.*
six hundred, sescentī, ae, a.
size, māgnitūdō, inis, *f.*
slave, servus, ī, *m.*
small, parvus, a, um (§ 72).
so (*of degree*), tam.
so, thus (*of manner*), ita, sīc.
so great, tantus, a, um.
so many, tot, *indecl.*
soldier, mīles, itis, *m.*
some, something, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
son, fīlius, ī, *m.*
Spain, Hispānia, ae, *f.*
spare, parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus (§ 187, II, *a*).
speak, loquor, ī, locūtus sum; dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.

speed, celeritās, ātis, *f.*
spend, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.
standard, sīgnum, ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, ātis, *f.*
station, collocō, 1.
stone, lapis, idis, *n.*
straightway, statim.
such, tālis, e.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, patior, ī, passus sum.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, ātis, *f.*
summon, vocō, 1.
(superior), be superior to, superō, 1.
supply, cōpia, ae, *f.*
surpass, superō, 1.
surrender (oneself), dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus.
surround, circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus; circumeō, īre, iī, itus.
suspicion, suspīciō, ōnis, *f.*
swift, celer, eris, ere.
sword, gladius, ī (ii), *m.*

take, seize, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
take by storm, expūgnō, 1.
talent, talentum, ī, *n.*
tarry, moror, ārī, ātus sum.
teach, doceō, ēre, uī, doctus.
tell, say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
ten, decem, *indecl.*
terrify, perterreō, ēre, uī, territus.
than, quam, *conj.; see also* § 217.
that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.
that of yours, iste, ista, istud.
that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
that, in order that, ut; quī, quae, quod *with the subj.; with comp.*, quō.
that, lest, *with verbs of fearing*, nē.
that not, in order that not, nē.
that not, *with verbs of fearing*, ut.
that (*of result*), ut.
that not (*of result*), ut nōn.
that, on the ground that, quod.
their, their own, suus, a, um.
there, ibi.
they, *see he, she, etc.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, 1.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
those, *as antecedent of rel.*, eī, eae, ea.
thou, tū, tuī.
though, quamquam, quamvīs, etsī, cum.
thousand, mille; *pl.*, mīllia, ium, *n.*
three, trēs, tria.
three days, trīduum, ī, *n.*
three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.
thrust out, ēiciō, ere, ējēcī, ējectus.
till, dum, dōnec, *conj.*
time, tempus, oris, *n.*
to, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
(top) top of, *with a noun*, summus, a, um (§ 73, 2; 241, 1).
torture, supplicium, ī (iī), *n.*
touch, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
tower, turris, is, *f.*
town, oppidum, ī, *n.*
tree, arbor, oris, *f.*
trench, fossa, ae, *f.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, ī, *m.*
troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
trust, cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, *semi-dep.* (§ 187, II, *a*).
try, make trial, temptō, āre, āvī, ātus.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.
two hundred, ducentī, ae, a.

uncertain, incertus, a, um.
under, sub., *prep. w. abl. or acc.*
understand, intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus.
unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.
unharmed, incolumis, e.
unite, conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus.
until, dum, dōnec, quoad.
unwilling, invītus, a, um; **be unwilling**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
uprising, tumultus, ūs, *m.*
us, nōs, nostrum, nostrī, *pl. of* ego. Cf. § 242, 2.
use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.

valor, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
Veneti, Venetī, ōrum, *m.*
very many, complūrēs, a; *gen.*, complūrium.
victor, victor, ōris, *m.*
victory, victōria, ae, *f.*
vigorous, ācer, ācris, ācre.
vigorously, ācriter.
village, vīcus, ī, *m.*
violence, vīs, vis (§ 41), *f.*
virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
wait, exspectō, 1.
war, bellum, ī, *n.*
warm, moneō, ēre, uī, itus.
watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*
weapons, arma, ōrum, *n.*
welcome, grātus, a, um.
well, bene (§ 77, 1).
what? quis (quī), quae, quid, (quod).
whatever, quisquis, quidquid.
when? quandō.
when, *rel.*, ubi, ut, cum.
whence, unde.
where? ubi.
where, *rel.*, ubi.
whether, num, -ne.
while, *conj.*, dum (§ 293).
whither, quō.
who? quis.
who, which, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
whole, tōtus, a, um (§ 66).
why? cūr, quārē.
wife, uxor, ōris, *f.*
willing, be willing, volō, velle, voluī.
win, parō, 1.
wing (of an army), cornū, ūs, *n.*
winter, hiems, is, *f.*
winter quarters, hīberna, ōrum, *n.*
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, *prep. w. abl.*
withdraw (*trans.*), subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
withdraw (*intrans.*), discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
without, sine, *prep. w. abl.*
withstand, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.

woman, mulier, ieris, *f.*
word, verbum, ī, *n.*
work (*a work*), opus, eris, *n.*
worthy, dīgnus, a, um.
wound (*noun*), vulnus, eris, *n.*
wound (*verb*), vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus.
write, scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.
wrong (*a wrong*), injūria, ae, *f.*
year, annus, ī, *m.*
yes, *see* § 162, 5, *a.*
yet, not yet, nōndum.
you, tū, tuī.
young man, adulēscēns, entis, *m.*
your, your own, tuus, a, um; vester, tra, trum.
youth (*a youth*), adulēscēns, entis, *m.*

A Latin Grammar.

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 282 pages. Price, 80 cents.

IN this book the essential facts of Latin Grammar are presented within the smallest compass consistent with high scholarly standards. It covers not only the work of the preparatory school, but also that of the required courses in college and university. By omitting rare forms and syntactical usages found only in ante-classical and post-classical Latin, and by relegating to an Appendix theoretical and historical questions, it has been found possible to treat the subject with entire adequacy in the compass of 250 pages exclusive of Indexes. In the German schools, books of this scope fully meet the exacting demands of the entire gymnasial course, and those who have tried Bennett's Grammar find that they are materially helped by being relieved of the mass of useless and irrelevant matter which forms the bulk of the older grammars. All Latin texts for reading in secondary schools, recently issued, contain references in the notes to Bennett's Latin Grammar.

Professor William A. Houghton, *Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine:* The Grammar proper is admirably adapted to its purpose in its clearness of arrangement and classification, and in its simplicity and precision of statement, giving definitely just what the pupil must know, and not crowding the page with a mass of matter that too often disheartens the young student instead of helping him. I trust it will come into general use, for I think for the reasons just given, and because of its moderate compass and attractive appearance, students are likely to get more practical grammatical knowledge out of it than they generally do from the larger grammars.

John F. Peck, *Oberlin Academy, Oberlin, Ohio:* Bennett's Latin Grammar was adopted as a text-book in Oberlin Academy in 1897. It is proving itself a very satisfactory text-book and increasingly popular. The teachers of Latin in Oberlin Academy are thoroughly satisfied with the book and find it exceedingly helpful in their work.

The Critic, *Feb.* 29, 1896. The book is a marvel of condensed, yet clear and forcible, statement. The ground covered in the treatment of forms and syntax is adequate for ordinary school work and for the use of freshmen and sophomores in college.